

**U.S. SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549**

FORM N-2

REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

(Check appropriate box or boxes)

Pre-Effective Amendment No.

Post-

Effective Amendment No.

SURO CAPITAL CORP.

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in charter)

**One Sansome Street, Suite 730
San Francisco, CA 94104**
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

Registrant's telephone number, including Area Code: (650) 235-4769

**Mark D. Klein
Chief Executive Officer and President
SuRo Capital Corp.
One Sansome Street, Suite 730
San Francisco, CA 94104**
(Name and address of agent for service)

COPIES TO:

**Steven B. Boehm, Esq.
Payam Siadatpour, Esq.
Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP
700 Sixth Street, NW, Suite 700
Washington, DC 20001
(202) 383-0100**

Approximate date of proposed public offering:

From time to time after the effective date of this Registration Statement.

If any securities being registered on this Form will be offered on a delayed or continuous basis in reliance on Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered in connection with a dividend reinvestment plan, check the following box.

It is proposed that this filing will become effective (check appropriate box):

when declared effective pursuant to section 8(c).

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933

Title of Securities Being Registered	Amount Being Registered	Proposed Maximum Offering Price per Unit	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(1)	Amount of Registration Fee ⁽¹⁾⁽⁷⁾
Common Stock, \$0.01 par value per share(2)(3)				
Preferred Stock, \$0.01 par value per share(2)				
Subscription Rights(2)				
Warrants(4)				
Debt Securities(5)				
Total⁽⁶⁾			\$ 400,000,000	\$ 5,192

- (1) Estimated pursuant to Rule 457(o) of the rules and regulations under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), solely for the purpose of determining the registration fee. The proposed maximum offering price per security will be determined, from time to time, by SuRo Capital Corp. (the "Registrant") in connection with the sale by the Registrant of the securities registered under this Registration Statement.
 - (2) Subject to footnote 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of shares of the Registrant's common stock, preferred stock, or subscription rights to purchase shares of the Registrant's common stock as may be sold, from time to time.
 - (3) Includes such indeterminate number of shares of the Registrant's common stock as may, from time to time, be issued upon conversion or exchange of other securities registered hereunder, to the extent any such securities are, by their terms, convertible or exchangeable for common stock.
 - (4) Subject to footnote 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of the Registrant's warrants as may be sold, from time to time, representing rights to purchase common stock, preferred stock or debt securities of the Registrant.
 - (5) Subject to footnote 6 below, there is being registered hereunder an indeterminate number of debt securities of the Registrant as may be sold, from time to time. If any debt securities of the Registrant are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate price to investors not to exceed \$400,000,000.
 - (6) In no event will the aggregate offering price of all securities issued from time to time pursuant to this Registration Statement exceed \$400,000,000.
 - (7) Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the Registrant is carrying forward to this Registration Statement \$360 million in aggregate offering price of unsold securities that the Registrant previously registered on its registration statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-191307) initially filed on September 23, 2013 (the "Prior Registration Statement"). Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the filing fee previously paid in connection with such unsold securities will continue to be applied to such unsold securities. The amount of the registration fee in the "Calculation of Registration Fee Under the Securities Act of 1933" table relates to the additional \$40 million in aggregate offering price of securities being registered hereunder. As a result, a filing fee of \$5,192 is being paid herewith. Pursuant to Rule 415(a)(6) under the Securities Act, the offering of unsold securities under the Prior Registration Statement will be deemed terminated as of the date of effectiveness of this Registration Statement.
-
-

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.

SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED JULY 2, 2020

PROSPECTUS



\$400,000,000

SuRo Capital Corp.

**Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Subscription Rights
Debt Securities
Warrants**

We are an internally managed non-diversified closed-end management investment company that has elected to be regulated as a business development company (“BDC”) under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “1940 Act”). We have also elected to be treated as a regulated investment company (“RIC”) under subchapter M of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), and expect to continue to operate in a manner so as to qualify for the tax treatment applicable to RICs. We commenced operations upon completion of our initial public offering (“IPO”) in May 2011.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio’s total return, principally by seeking capital gains on our equity and equity-related investments, and to a lesser extent, income from debt investments. We invest principally in the equity securities of what we believe to be rapidly growing venture-capital-backed emerging companies. We acquire our investments through direct investments in prospective portfolio companies, secondary marketplaces for private companies and negotiations with selling stockholders. We may also invest on an opportunistic basis in select publicly traded equity securities or certain non-U.S. companies that otherwise meet our investment criteria, subject to applicable requirements of the 1940 Act.

We seek to deploy capital primarily in the form of non-controlling equity and equity-related investments, including common stock, warrants, preferred stock and similar forms of senior equity, which may or may not be convertible into a portfolio company’s common equity, and convertible debt securities with a significant equity component. Typically, our preferred stock investments are non-income producing, have different voting rights than our common stock investments and are generally convertible into common stock at our discretion. As our investment strategy is focused on equity positions, our investments generally do not produce current income and therefore we may be dependent on future capital raising to meet our operating needs if no other source of liquidity is available. We seek to create a low-turnover portfolio that includes investments in companies representing a broad range of investment themes.

We may offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings, up to \$400,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights to purchase shares of our common stock, debt securities, and warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, which we refer to, collectively, as our “securities.” The preferred stock, subscription rights, warrants and debt securities offered hereby may be convertible or exchangeable into shares of our common stock. The securities may be offered at prices and on terms to be described in one or more supplements to this prospectus.

The offering price per share of our common stock less any underwriting commissions or discounts will generally not be less than the net asset value per share of our common stock at the time we make the offering. However, we may in the future seek to issue shares of our common stock pursuant to this prospectus at a price per share that is less than our net asset value per share (i) with the prior approval of the majority of our common stockholders or (ii) under such other circumstances as the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) may permit. In addition, even if we seek and obtain stockholder approval to sell our common stock at a price below our net asset value per share, we cannot do so unless our board of directors (“Board of Directors”) determines that it would be in our and our stockholders' best interests to do so.

Our securities may be offered directly to one or more purchasers, or through agents designated from time to time by us, or to or through underwriters or dealers. The prospectus supplement relating to an offering will identify any agents or underwriters involved in the sale of our securities, and will disclose any applicable purchase price, fee, commission or discount arrangement between us and our agents or underwriters or among our underwriters or the basis upon which such amount may be calculated. See “Plan of Distribution” in this prospectus. We may not sell any of our securities through agents, underwriters or dealers or otherwise without delivery of this prospectus and a prospectus supplement describing the method and terms of the offering of securities.

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SSSS.” As of June 30, 2020, the last reported sales price on the Nasdaq Capital Market for our common stock was \$8.47 per share.

This prospectus describes some of the general terms that may apply to an offering of our securities. We will provide the specific terms of these offerings and securities in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you in connection with these offerings. The prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus may also add, update, or change information contained in this prospectus. You should carefully read this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement, and any related free writing prospectus, and the documents incorporated by reference, before buying any of the securities being offered. We file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC (<http://www.sec.gov>), which is available free of charge by contacting us by mail at One Sansome Street, Suite 730, San Francisco, CA 94104, on our website at <http://www.surocap.com>, by telephone at (650) 235-4769 or by email at IR@surocap.com. This prospectus should be retained for future reference. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus or any supplements to this prospectus, and you should not consider that information to be part of this prospectus or any supplements to this prospectus. The contact information provided above may be used by you to make investor inquiries.

An investment in our securities is very risky and highly speculative. Shares of closed-end investment companies, including BDCs, frequently trade at a discount to their net asset value. In addition, the companies in which we invest are subject to special risks. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page 17 of this prospectus, in Part I, Item 1A of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q and in, or incorporated by reference into, the applicable prospectus supplement and in any free writing prospectuses we may authorize for use in connection with a specific offering, and under similar headings in the other documents that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus, to read about factors you should consider, including the risk of leverage, before investing in our securities.

Neither the SEC nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

This prospectus may not be used to consummate sales of securities unless accompanied by a prospectus supplement.

The date of this prospectus is _____, 2020.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
About this Prospectus	1
Prospectus Summary	2
The Offering	8
Fees and Expenses	11
Financial Highlights	14
Selected Financial and Other Data	15
Risk Factors	17
Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements	18
Use of Proceeds	20
Price Range of Common Stock and Distributions	21
Senior Securities	23
Business	25
Portfolio Companies	26
Portfolio Management	27
Corporate Governance	28
Executive Compensation	29
Related Party Transactions and Certain Relationships	30
Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management	31
Regulation as a Business Development Company	32
Determination of Net Asset Value	33
Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value	35
Dividend Reinvestment Plan	38
Certain U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations	39
Description of Our Securities	48
Description of Our Capital Stock	48
Description of Our Preferred Stock	54
Description of Our Subscription Rights	55
Description of Our Debt Securities	57
Description of Our Warrants	70
Plan of Distribution	72
Custodian, Transfer and Distribution Paying Agent and Registrar	73
Brokerage Allocation and Other Practices	74
Legal Matters	74
Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	75
Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference	76
Available Information	77

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the SEC, using the “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration statement, we may offer, from time to time, in one or more offerings, up to \$400,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights to purchase shares of our common stock, debt securities or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities, on terms to be determined at the time of the offering. Our securities may be offered at prices and on terms described in one or more supplements to this prospectus. This prospectus provides you with a general description of our securities and the offerings thereof that we may make pursuant to this prospectus. Each time we use this prospectus to offer our securities, we will provide a prospectus supplement that will contain specific information about the terms of that offering. We may also authorize one or more free writing prospectuses to be provided to you that may contain material information relating to such offerings. In a prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus, we may also add, update or change any of the information contained in this prospectus or in the documents we have incorporated by reference into this prospectus. This prospectus, together with the applicable prospectus supplement, any related free writing prospectus, and the documents incorporated by reference into this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, will include all material information relating to the applicable offering. Before buying any of the securities being offered, you should carefully read both this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, together with any exhibits and the additional information described in the sections titled “Available Information,” “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference,” “Summary” and “Risk Factors” in this prospectus.

This prospectus may contain estimates and information concerning our industry, including market size and growth rates of the markets in which we participate, that are based on industry publications and reports. This information involves many assumptions and limitations, and you are cautioned not to give undue weight to these estimates. We have not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of the data contained in these industry publications and reports. The industry in which we operate is subject to a high degree of uncertainty and risk due to a variety of factors, including those described in the section titled “Risk Factors” in this prospectus, in Part I, Item 1A our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, that could cause results to differ materially from those expressed in these publications and reports.

This prospectus includes summaries of certain provisions contained in some of the documents described in this prospectus, but reference is made to the actual documents for complete information. All of the summaries are qualified in their entirety by the actual documents. Copies of some of the documents referred to herein have been filed, will be filed, or will be incorporated by reference as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and you may obtain copies of those documents as described in the section titled “Available Information” in this prospectus.

You should rely only on the information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement or in any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you. We have not authorized any dealer, salesperson or other person to provide you with different information or to make representations as to matters not stated in this prospectus or in any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you. We take no responsibility for, and can provide no assurance as to the reliability of, any other information that others may give you. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. This prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement and any free writing prospectus prepared by or on behalf of us or to which we have referred you do not constitute an offer to sell, or a solicitation of an offer to buy, any securities by any person in any jurisdiction where it is unlawful for that person to make such an offer or solicitation or to any person in any jurisdiction to whom it is unlawful to make such an offer or solicitation. You should not assume that the information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement or in any such free writing prospectus is accurate as of any date other than their respective dates.

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

The following summary contains basic information about offerings pursuant to this prospectus. It may not contain all the information that is important to you. For a more complete understanding of offerings pursuant to this prospectus, we encourage you to read this entire prospectus and the documents to which we have referred in this prospectus, together with any accompanying prospectus supplements or free writing prospectuses, including the risks set forth under the caption “Risk Factors” in Part I, Item 1A of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, in this prospectus, the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, and under similar headings in any other documents that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, and the information set forth under the caption “Available Information” in this prospectus.

Except where the context suggests otherwise, the terms “we,” “us,” “our,” the “Company” and “SuRo Capital” refer to SuRo Capital Corp. (formerly known as Sutter Rock Capital Corp).

SuRo Capital

We are an internally-managed, non-diversified closed-end management investment company that formed in 2010 as a Maryland corporation. We have elected to be regulated as a BDC under the 1940 Act, and have elected to be treated, and intend to qualify annually, as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code.

On and effective June 22, 2020, we changed our name to “SuRo Capital Corp.” from “Sutter Rock Capital Corp.” On and effective March 12, 2019 (the “Effective Date”), our Board of Directors approved internalizing our operating structure (“Internalization”) and we began operating as an internally-managed non-diversified closed-end management investment company that has elected to be regulated as a BDC under the 1940 Act. Prior to the Effective Date, we were externally managed by our former investment adviser, GSV Asset Management, LLC (“GSV Asset Management”), pursuant to an investment advisory agreement (the “Investment Advisory Agreement”), and our former administrator, GSV Capital Service Company, LLC, provided the administrative services necessary for our operations pursuant to an administration agreement (the “Administration Agreement”). In connection with our Internalization, the Investment Advisory Agreement and the Administration Agreement were terminated as of the Effective Date in accordance with their respective terms. As a result, we no longer pay any fees or expenses under an investment advisory agreement or administration agreement. See “Part II, Item 8—Note 3—Related-Party Arrangements” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Part I, Item 1—Note 3—Related-Party Arrangements” in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for more information.

The Company’s date of inception was January 6, 2011, which is the date it commenced its development stage activities, and it commenced operations as a BDC upon completion of its IPO in May 2011. The Company’s common stock is currently listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SSSS” (formerly “GSVC”). The Company began its investment operations during the second quarter of 2011. See “Part II, Item 7 — Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Part I, Item 2 — Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio’s total return, principally by seeking capital gains on our equity and equity-related investments, and to a lesser extent, income from debt investments. We invest principally in the equity securities of what we believe to be rapidly growing venture-capital-backed emerging companies. We acquire our investments through direct investments in prospective portfolio companies, secondary marketplaces for private companies, and negotiations with selling stockholders. We may also invest on an opportunistic basis in select publicly traded equity securities or certain non-U.S. companies that otherwise meet our investment criteria. To the extent we make investments in private equity funds and hedge funds that are excluded from the definition of “investment company” under the 1940 Act by Section 3(c)(1) or 3(c)(7) of the 1940 Act, we will limit such investments to no more than 15% of our net assets.

Our investment philosophy is based on a disciplined approach of identifying promising investments in high-growth, venture-backed companies across several key industry themes which may include, among others, social mobile, cloud computing and big data, internet commerce, financial technology, mobility, and enterprise software. Our investment decisions are based on a disciplined analysis of available information regarding each potential portfolio company’s business operations, focusing on the portfolio company’s growth potential, the quality of recurring revenues, and path to profitability, as well as an understanding of key market fundamentals. Venture capital funds or other institutional investors have invested in the vast majority of companies that we evaluate.

We seek to deploy capital primarily in the form of non-controlling equity and equity-related investments, including common stock, warrants, preferred stock and similar forms of senior equity, which may or may not be convertible into a portfolio company's common equity, and convertible debt securities with a significant equity component. Typically, our preferred stock investments are non-income producing, have different voting rights than our common stock investments and are generally convertible into common stock at our discretion. As our investment strategy is primarily focused on equity positions, our investments generally do not produce current income and therefore we may be dependent on future capital raising to meet our operating needs if no other source of liquidity is available.

We seek to create a low-turnover portfolio that includes investments in companies representing a broad range of investment themes.

Operating and Regulatory Structure

We formed in 2010 as Maryland corporation that operates as an internally managed, non-diversified closed-end management investment company. Our investment activities are supervised by our Board of Directors and managed by our executive officers and investments professionals, all of which are our employees.

As a BDC, we are subject to certain regulatory requirements. See "Part I, Item 1 — Business — Regulation as a Business Development Company" in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K. Also, while we are permitted to finance investments using debt, our ability to use debt is limited in certain significant aspects. With certain limited exceptions, we may issue "senior securities," including borrowing money from banks or other financial institutions only in amounts such that the ratio of our total assets (less total liabilities other than indebtedness represented by senior securities) to our total indebtedness represented by senior securities plus preferred stock, if any, is at least 200% (or 150% if certain conditions are met) after such incurrence or issuance. This means that generally, we can borrow up to \$1 for every \$1 of investor equity (or, if certain conditions are met, we can borrow up to \$2 for every \$1 of investor equity). See "Risk Factors" in Part I, Item 1A in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for more information.

We have elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code and expect to continue to operate in a manner so as to qualify for the tax treatment applicable to RICs. See "Certain U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations" in this prospectus and "Part II, Item 8 — Financial Statements and Supplementary Data — Note 2 — Significant Accounting Policies — U.S. Federal and State Income Taxes" and "Part II, Item 8 — Financial Statements and Supplementary Data — Note 9 — Income Taxes" in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K.

As of June 30, 2020, we had seven employees, each of whom was directly employed by us. These employees include our executive officers, investment and finance professionals, and administrative staff. All of our employees are located in our principal executive office in San Francisco, California. Our principal office is located at One Sansome Street, Suite 730, San Francisco, CA 94104, and our telephone number is (650) 235-4769. We maintain a website at <http://www.surocap.com>. Information contained on our website is not incorporated by reference into this prospectus, and you should not consider information contained on our website to be part of this prospectus.

Investment Opportunity

We believe that society is experiencing a convergence of numerous disruptive trends, producing new high-growth markets.

At the same time, we believe that the IPO markets have experienced substantial structural changes which have made it significantly more challenging for private companies to go public. Volatile equity markets, a lack of investment research coverage for private and smaller companies and investor demand for a longer history of revenue and earnings growth have resulted in companies staying private significantly longer than in the past. In addition, increased public company compliance obligations such as those imposed by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 and the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act have made it more costly and less attractive to become a public company. As a result, there are significantly fewer IPOs today than there were during the 1990s, with prospective public companies taking longer to come to market.

Investment Strategy

We seek to maintain our portfolio of potentially high-growth emerging private companies via a repeatable and disciplined investment approach, as well as to provide investors with access to such companies through our publicly traded common stock.

Our investment objective is to maximize our portfolio's total return, principally by seeking capital gains on our equity and equity-related investments, and to a lesser extent, income from debt investments. We have adopted the following business strategies to achieve our investment objective:

- **Identify high quality growth companies.** Based on our extensive experience in analyzing technology trends and markets, we have identified several technology sub-sectors, including social mobile, big data and cloud, marketplaces, and education technology, as opportunities where we believe companies are capable of producing substantial growth. We rely on our collective industry knowledge as well as an understanding of where leading venture capitalists and other institutional investors are investing.

We leverage a combination of our relationships throughout Silicon Valley and our independent research to identify leaders in our targeted sub-sectors that we believe are differentiated and best positioned for sustained growth. Our team continues to expand our sourcing network in order to evaluate a wide range of investment opportunities in companies that demonstrate strong operating fundamentals. We are targeting businesses that have been shown to provide scaled valuation growth before a potential IPO or strategic exit.

- **Acquire positions in targeted investments.** We seek to selectively add to our portfolio by sourcing investments at an acceptable price through our disciplined investing strategy. To this end, we utilize multiple methods to acquire equity stakes in private companies that are not available to many individual investors.

Direct equity investments. We seek direct investments in private companies. There is a large market among emerging private companies for equity capital investments. Many of these companies, particularly within the technology sector, lack the necessary cash flows to sustain substantial amounts of debt, and therefore have viewed equity capital as a more attractive long-term financing tool. We seek to be a source of such equity capital as a means of investing in these companies and look for opportunities to invest alongside other venture capital and private equity investors with whom we have established relationships.

Private secondary marketplaces and direct share purchases. We also utilize private secondary marketplaces as a means to acquire equity and equity-related interests in privately held companies that meet our investment criteria and that we believe are attractive candidates for investment. We believe that such markets offer new channels for access to equity investments in private companies and provide a potential source of liquidity should we decide to exit an investment. In addition, we also purchase shares directly from stockholders, including current or former employees. As certain companies grow and experience significant increased value while remaining private, employees and other stockholders may seek liquidity by selling shares directly to a third party or to a third party via a secondary marketplace. Sales of shares in private companies are typically restricted by contractual transfer restrictions and may be further restricted by provisions in company charter documents, investor rights of first refusal and co-sale and company employment and trading policies, which may impose strict limits on transfer. We believe that the reputation of our investment professionals within the industry and established history of investing affords us a favorable position when seeking approval for a purchase of shares subject to such limitations.

- **Create access to a varied investment portfolio.** We seek to hold a varied portfolio of non-controlling equity investments, which we believe will minimize the impact on our portfolio of a negative downturn at any one specific company. We believe that our relatively varied portfolio will provide a convenient means for accredited and non-accredited individual investors to obtain access to an asset class that has generally been limited to venture capital, private equity and similar large institutional investors.

Starting in 2017, we began to focus our investment strategy to increase the size of our investments in individual portfolio companies. While this will likely have the effect of reducing the number of companies in which we hold investments, we believe that the shift towards larger positions will better allow our investment professionals to focus our investments in companies and industries that are more likely to result in beneficial returns to our stockholders.

Competitive Advantages

We believe that we benefit from the following competitive advantages in executing our investment strategy:

- **Capable team of investment professionals.** Our executive officers, investment professionals, and Board of Directors have significant experience researching and investing in the types of high-growth venture-capital-backed companies we are targeting for investment. Through our proprietary company-evaluation process, including our identification of technology trends and themes and company research, we believe we have developed important insight into identifying and valuing emerging private companies.
- **Disciplined and repeatable investment process.** We have established a disciplined and repeatable process to locate and acquire available shares at attractive valuations by utilizing multiple sources. In contrast to industry “aggregators” that accumulate stock at market prices, we conduct valuation analysis and make acquisitions only when we can invest at valuations that we believe are attractive to our investors.
- **Deep relationships with significant credibility to source and complete transactions.** Our executive officers and investment professionals, are strategically located in San Francisco, California, allowing us to fully engage in the technology and innovation ecosystem. Our wide network of venture capital and technology professionals supports our sourcing efforts and helps provide access to promising investment opportunities. Our executive officers and investment professionals have also developed strong relationships in the financial, investing and technology-related sectors.
- **Source of permanent investing capital.** As a publicly traded corporation, we have access to a source of permanent equity capital that we can use to invest in portfolio companies. This permanent equity capital is a significant differentiator from other potential investors that may be required to return capital to stockholders on a defined schedule. We believe that our ability to invest on a long-term time horizon makes us attractive to companies looking for strong, stable owners of their equity.
- **Early mover advantage.** We believe we are one of the few publicly traded BDCs with a specific focus on investing in high-growth venture-backed companies. The transactions that we have executed to date since our IPO have helped to establish our reputation with the types of secondary sellers and emerging companies that we target for investment. We have leveraged a number of relationships and channels to acquire the equity of private companies. As we continue to grow our portfolio with attractive investments, we believe that our reputation as a committed partner will be further enhanced, allowing us to source and close investments that would otherwise be unavailable. We believe that these factors collectively differentiate us from other potential investors in private company securities and will serve our goal to complete equity transactions in compelling private companies at attractive valuations.

Our primary competitors include specialty finance companies including late-stage venture capital funds, private equity funds, other crossover funds, public funds investing in private companies and public and private BDCs. Many of these entities have greater financial and managerial resources than we will have. In addition, some of our competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments, which could allow them to consider more investments and establish more relationships than we do. Furthermore, many of our competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions the 1940 Act imposes on us as a BDC. For additional information concerning the competitive risks we face, see “Part I, Item 1A — Risk Factors — Risks Related to Our Business and Structure” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Part II, Item 1A—Risk Factors” in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q.

Investment Process

Concentrated Technology-related Focus

Our executive officers and investment professionals have identified five key investment themes from which we have seen significant numbers of high-growth companies emerge: social and mobile, financial technology and services, big data and cloud, marketplaces, and education. However, the opportunity set of high-growth venture-backed technology companies extends beyond these key investment themes into much broader markets. These broad markets have the potential to produce disruptive technologies, reach a large addressable market, and provide significant commercial opportunities. Within these areas, we have identified trends that could create significant positive effects on growth such as globalization, consolidation, branding, convergence and network effects. Thus, while we remain focused on selecting market leaders within the key investment themes identified, our executive officers and investment professionals actively seek out promising investments across a diverse selection of new technology subsectors.

Investment Targeting and Screening

We identify prospective portfolio companies through an extensive network of relationships developed by our executive officers and investment professionals, supplemented by the knowledge and relationships of our Board of Directors. Investment opportunities that fall within our identified themes are validated against the observed behavior of leading venture capitalists and institutional investors, as well as through our own internal and external research. We evaluate potential portfolio companies across a spectrum of criteria, including industry positioning and leadership, stage of growth, path to profitability, and several other factors that collectively characterize our proprietary investment process. We typically seek to invest our assets under management in the equity of well-established and growth stage companies, and debt investments of emerging companies that fit within our targeted areas. Based on our initial screening, we identify a select set of companies that we evaluate in greater depth.

Research and Due Diligence Process

Once we identify those companies that we believe warrant more in-depth analysis, we focus on their total addressable market, revenue growth and sustainability, and earnings growth, as well as other metrics that may be strongly correlated with higher valuations. We also focus on the company's management team and any significant financial sponsor, their current business model, competitive positioning, regulatory and legal issues, the quality of any intellectual property and other investment-specific due diligence. Each prospective portfolio company that passes our initial due diligence review is given a qualitative ranking to allow us to evaluate it against others in our pipeline, and we review and update these companies on a regular basis.

Our due diligence process will vary depending on whether we are investing through a private secondary transaction on a marketplace or with a selling stockholder or by direct equity investment. We access information on our potential investments through a variety of sources, including information made available on secondary marketplaces, publications by private company research firms, industry publications, commissioned analysis by third-party research firms, and, to a limited extent, directly from the company or financial sponsor. We utilize a combination of each of these sources to help us set a target value for the companies we ultimately select for investment.

Portfolio Construction and Sourcing

Upon completion of our research and due diligence process, we select investments for inclusion in our portfolio based on their value proposition, addressable market, fundamentals and valuation. We seek to create a relatively varied portfolio that we expect will include investments in companies representing a broad range of investment themes. We generally choose to pursue specific investments based on the availability of shares and valuation expectations. We utilize a combination of secondary marketplaces, direct purchases from stockholders and direct equity investments in order to make investments in our portfolio companies. Once we have established an initial position in a portfolio company, we may choose to increase our stake through subsequent purchases. Maintaining a balanced portfolio is a key to our success, and as a result we constantly evaluate the composition of our investments and our pipeline to ensure we are exposed to a diverse set of companies within our target segments.

Transaction Execution

We enter into purchase agreements for substantially all of our private company portfolio investments. Private company securities are typically subject to contractual transfer limitations, which may, among other things, give the issuer, its assignees and/or its stockholders a particular period of time, often 30 days or more, in which to exercise a veto right, or a right of first refusal over, the sale of such securities. Accordingly, the purchase agreements we enter into for secondary transactions typically require the lapse or satisfaction of these rights as a condition to closing. Under these circumstances, we may be required to deposit the purchase price into escrow upon signing, with the funds released to the seller at closing or returned to us if the closing conditions are not met.

Risk Management and Monitoring

We monitor the financial trends of each portfolio company to assess our exposure to individual companies as well as to evaluate overall portfolio quality. We establish valuation targets at the portfolio level and for gross and net exposures with respect to specific companies and industries within our overall portfolio. In cases where we make a direct investment in a portfolio company, we may also obtain board positions, board observation rights and/or information rights from that portfolio company in connection with our equity investment. We regularly monitor our portfolio for compliance with the diversification requirements for purposes of maintaining our status as a BDC and a RIC for tax purposes.

Risk Associated with Our Business

Our business is subject to numerous risks, as described in the section titled “Risk Factors” in the applicable prospectus supplement and in any free writing prospectuses we have authorized for use in connection with a specific offering, and under similar headings in the documents that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus, including the section titled “Risk Factors” included in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, as well as in any of our subsequent SEC filings.

THE OFFERING

We may offer, from time to time, up to \$400,000,000 of our common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights to purchase shares of our common stock, debt securities, or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities on terms to be determined at the time of each offering and set forth in one or more supplements to this prospectus. We will offer our securities at prices and on terms to be set forth in one or more supplements to this prospectus and any related free writing prospectus.

Our securities may be offered directly to one or more purchasers, including to existing stockholders in a rights offering, by us or through agents designated from time to time by us, or to or through underwriters or dealers. The prospectus supplement relating to an offering and any related free writing prospectus will disclose the terms of such offering, including the name or names of any agents or underwriters involved in the sale of our securities by us, the purchase price, and any fee, commission or discount arrangement between us and our agents or underwriters or among our underwriters or the basis upon which such amount may be calculated. See “Plan of Distribution” in this prospectus. We may not sell any of our securities through agents, underwriters or dealers without delivery of this prospectus and a prospectus supplement describing the method and terms of the offering of our securities.

Set forth below is additional information regarding offerings of our securities pursuant to this prospectus:

Use of Proceeds	Unless otherwise specified in a prospectus supplement, we plan to invest the net proceeds from the sale of our securities pursuant to this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement in portfolio companies in accordance with our investment objective and strategies described in this prospectus. We will also use a portion of any such net proceeds to pay operating expenses, and other expenses such as due diligence expenses relating to potential new investments. We anticipate that substantially all of the net proceeds of any such offering will be used for the above purposes within six to twelve months, depending on the availability of investment opportunities that are consistent with our investment objectives and market conditions, except for such amounts as may be retained for purposes of funding our ongoing operations subsequent to the completion of such offering. Each supplement to this prospectus or free writing prospectus relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of the proceeds from such offering. See “Use of Proceeds” in this prospectus.
Nasdaq Capital Market symbol	Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SSSS.”
Distributions	The timing and amount of our dividends, if any, will be determined by our Board of Directors. Any dividends to our stockholders will be declared out of assets legally available for distribution. As we focus on making primarily capital gains-based investments in equity securities, we do not anticipate that we will pay dividends on a quarterly basis or become a predictable distributor of dividends, and we expect that our dividends, if any, will be less consistent than the dividends of other BDCs that primarily make debt investments.
Taxation	We have elected to be treated, and intend to comply with the requirements to continue to qualify annually, as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. As a RIC, we generally will not have to pay corporate-level U.S. federal income tax on any ordinary income or capital gains that we distribute to our stockholders as dividends. To continue to maintain our RIC tax treatment, we must meet specified source-of-income and asset diversification requirements and distribute annually at least 90% of our ordinary income and realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses, if any. See “Certain U.S. Federal Income Tax Considerations” in this prospectus.

Leverage	<p>We expect to continue to use leverage to make investments. As a result, we may continue to be exposed to the risks of leverage, which include that leverage may be considered a speculative investment technique. The use of leverage magnifies the potential for gain and loss on amounts we invest and therefore, indirectly, increases the risks associated with investing in shares of our common stock. With certain limited exceptions, we may issue “senior securities,” including borrowing money from banks or other financial institutions only in amounts such that the ratio of our total assets (less total liabilities other than indebtedness represented by senior securities) to our total indebtedness represented by senior securities plus preferred stock, if any, is at least 200% (or 150% if certain conditions are met) after such incurrence or issuance. This means that generally, we can borrow up to \$1 for every \$1 of investor equity (or, if certain conditions are met, we can borrow up to \$2 for every \$1 of investor equity). The costs associated with our borrowings are borne by our stockholders. In connection with this offering, neither our Board of Directors nor our shareholders are being asked to approve a reduced asset coverage ratio. See “Risk Factors” in this prospectus, in Part I, Item 1A of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q.</p>
Trading at a Discount	<p>Shares of closed-end investment companies frequently trade at a discount to their net asset value. The possibility that our common stock may trade at a discount to our net asset value per share is separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value per share may decline. We cannot predict whether our common stock will trade above, at or below net asset value.</p>
Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value	<p>The offering price per share of our common stock, less any underwriting commissions or discounts, will not be less than the net asset value per share of our common stock at the time of the offering, except (i) with the requisite approval of our common stockholders or (ii) under such other circumstances as the SEC may permit. In addition, we cannot issue shares of our common stock below net asset value unless our board of directors determines that it would be in our and our stockholders’ best interests to do so. We did not seek stockholder authorization to issue common stock at a price below net asset value per share at our 2020 annual meeting of stockholders.</p> <p>Sales by us of our common stock at a discount from our net asset value pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering. See “Sales of Common Stock Below Net Asset Value.”</p>
Dividend Reinvestment Plan	<p>We have adopted an “opt out” dividend reinvestment plan (the “DRIP”). If your shares of common stock are registered in your own name, your distributions will automatically be reinvested under our DRIP in additional shares of common stock, unless you “opt out” of our DRIP so as to receive cash dividends by delivering a written notice to our dividend paying agent. If your shares are held in the name of a broker or other nominee, you should contact the broker or nominee for details regarding opting out of our DRIP. Stockholders who receive distributions in the form of stock will be subject to the same federal, state and local tax consequences as stockholders who elect to receive their distributions in cash. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan” in this prospectus.</p>

Certain Anti-Takeover Measures

Our charter and bylaws, as well as certain statutory and regulatory requirements, contain certain provisions that may have the effect of discouraging a third party from making an acquisition proposal for us. These anti-takeover provisions may inhibit a change in control in circumstances that could give the holders of our securities the opportunity to realize a premium over the market price for our securities. See “Description of Our Capital Stock” in this prospectus.

Available Information

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form N-2 together with all amendments and related exhibits under the Securities Act. The registration statement contains additional information about us and the securities being offered by this prospectus.

We are required to file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC under the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). The SEC maintains an Internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding registrants filed electronically by us with the SEC, which are available free of charge on the SEC’s website at <http://www.sec.gov>. This information is also available free of charge by contacting us at SuRo Capital Corp., One Sansome Street, Suite 730, San Francisco, CA 94104, by telephone at (650) 235-47769 or on our website at <http://www.surocap.com>.

Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the SEC. In accordance with the Small Business Credit Availability Act, we are allowed to “incorporate by reference” the information that we file with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is considered to comprise a part of this prospectus from the date we file that information. Any reports filed by us with the SEC subsequent to the date of this prospectus until we have sold all of the securities offered by this prospectus or the offering is otherwise terminated will automatically update and, where applicable, supersede any information contained in this prospectus or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. See “Incorporation of Certain Information by Reference” in this prospectus.

FEES AND EXPENSES

The following table is intended to assist you in understanding the costs and expenses that an investor in an offering will bear directly or indirectly. We caution you that some of the percentages indicated in the table below are estimates and may vary. The following table should not be considered a representation of our future expenses. Actual expenses may be greater or less than shown. Except where the context suggests otherwise, whenever this prospectus contains a reference to fees or expenses paid by “us” or “SuRo Capital,” or that “we” will pay fees or expenses, you will indirectly bear such fees or expenses as an investor in SuRo Capital Corp., however, your responsibility for such fees or expenses is limited to your investment in SuRo Capital Corp. The fee table and example below include all fees and expenses of our consolidated subsidiaries.

Stockholder transaction expenses:	
Sales load (as a percentage of offering price)	—%(1)
Offering expenses (as a percentage of offering price)	—%(2)
Dividend reinvestment plan expenses	—%(3)
Total stockholder transaction expenses (as a percentage of offering price)	—%(4)
Annual expenses (as a percentage of net assets attributable to common stock):(8)	
Operating expenses	4.84%(5)
Interest payments on borrowed funds	1.05%(6)
Other expenses	1.11%(7)
Total annual expenses	7.00%

- (1) In the event that our securities are sold to or through underwriters, a corresponding prospectus supplement will disclose the applicable sales load.
- (2) In the event that we conduct an offering of our securities, a corresponding prospectus supplement will disclose the estimated offering expenses. Our common stockholders will bear, directly or indirectly, the expenses of any offering of our securities, including debt securities.
- (3) Under the DRIP, the plan administrator’s fees will be paid by us. There will be no brokerage charges or other charges to stockholders who participate in the plan except that, if a participant elects by his or its written or telephonic notice to the plan administrator in advance of termination to have the plan administrator sell part or all of his or its shares and remit the proceeds to the participant, the plan administrator is authorized to deduct a \$15 transaction fee plus brokerage commission from the proceeds. For additional information, see “Dividend Reinvestment Plan” in this prospectus. The expenses of our DRIP are included in “Other Expenses.”
- (4) The total stockholder transaction expenses may include sales load and will be disclosed in a future prospectus supplement, if any.
- (5) Operating expenses in this table represent the estimated annual operating expenses of SuRo Capital and its consolidated subsidiaries based on annualized operating expenses for the quarter ended March 31, 2020. We do not have an investment adviser and are internally managed by our executive officers under the supervision of our Board of Directors. As a result, we do not pay investment advisory fees, but instead we pay the operating costs associated with employing investment management professionals including, without limitation, compensation expenses related to salaries, discretionary bonuses and restricted stock grants.
- (6) We are exposed to the risks of leverage, which may be considered a speculative investment technique. The use of leverage magnifies the potential for gain and loss on amounts invested and, therefore, increases the risks associated with an investment in us. Interest payments on borrowed funds represents our estimated annual interest payments based on actual interest rate terms under our outstanding 4.75% Convertible Senior Notes due 2023 (the “4.75% Convertible Senior Notes due 2023”) as of March 31, 2020.
- (7) “Other expenses,” which we calculate to equal \$2.0 million are based upon estimates for the twelve months ending March 31, 2021.

(8) Net assets attributable to common stock, which we calculate to equal \$180.5 million, reflect our March 31, 2020 net asset value increased to reflect an assumed annual return of 8.0% on our \$159.9 million of portfolio investments as of March 31, 2020.

Example

The following example demonstrates the projected dollar amount of total cumulative expenses that would be incurred over various periods with respect to a hypothetical investment in our common stock. In calculating the following expense amounts, we have assumed that our annual operating expenses would remain at the levels set forth in the table above. See footnote 6 above for additional information regarding certain assumptions regarding our level of leverage.

	<u>1 Year</u>	<u>3 Years</u>	<u>5 Years</u>	<u>10 Years</u>
You would pay the following expenses on a \$1,000 investment, assuming a 5% annual return	\$ 69	\$ 204	\$ 333	\$ 634

The example and the expenses in the tables above should not be considered a representation of our future expenses, and actual expenses may be greater or less than those shown. While the example assumes, as required by the SEC, a 5.0% annual return, our performance will vary and may result in a return greater or less than 5.0%. In addition, while the example assumes reinvestment of all dividends at net asset value participants in our DRIP will receive a number of shares of our common stock, determined by dividing the total dollar amount of the dividend payable to a participant by the market price per share of our common stock at the close of trading on the dividend payment date, which may be at, above or below net asset value. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan” in this prospectus for additional information regarding our DRIP.

FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS

Information regarding our financial highlights is incorporated by reference herein from our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K.

SELECTED FINANCIAL AND OTHER DATA

The following selected financial data as of and for the years ended December 31, 2019, 2018, 2017, 2016 and 2015 have been derived from our audited financial statements. Amounts for the three months ended March 31, 2020 were derived from our unaudited financial statements, and, in the opinion of management, reflect all adjustments (consisting only of normal recurring adjustments) that are necessary to present fairly the results for such interim periods. Historical data is not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for any future period. The selected financial data set forth below should be read in conjunction with, and is qualified by reference to, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our Consolidated Financial Statements, including the Notes thereto, in Part I, Item 7 of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and in Part I, Item 2 of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, which are incorporated by reference herein, and are available at www.sec.gov.

	March 31, 2020 (unaudited)	2019	2018	2017	2016	2015
Income Statement Data						
Total Investment Income	\$ 251,763	\$ 1,495,724	\$ 1,617,836	\$ 852,768	\$ 736,283	\$ 290,896
Gross Operating Expenses	3,256,316	10,946,792	15,144,834	22,439,855	1,999,646	26,978,235
Management fee waiver	—	—	(892,421)	(708,272)	—	—
Incentive fee waiver	—	—	(5,000,000)	—	—	—
Net Operating Expenses	3,256,316	10,946,792	9,252,413	21,731,583	1,999,646	26,978,235
Reversal of benefit from taxes on net investment loss ⁽⁴⁾	—	—	—	—	—	(21,969,370)
Net Investment Loss	(3,004,553)	(9,451,068)	(7,634,577)	(20,878,815)	(1,263,363)	(48,656,709)
Net realized gain/(loss) on investments	6,978,240	19,179,340	(7,433,619)	913,982	(2,634,471)	54,144,229
Benefit from taxes on net realized loss on investments ⁽⁴⁾	—	—	—	—	—	342,802
Realized loss on extinguishment of debt	—	—	(397,846)	—	—	—
Net change in unrealized appreciation/(depreciation) of investments	(27,665,934)	13,339,859	9,641,050	34,775,696	(73,213,845)	(13,422,245)
Benefit from taxes on unrealized depreciation of investments ⁽⁴⁾	—	885,566	6,716,735	2,757,070	2,116,784	16,058,080
Net increase/(decrease) in net assets resulting from operations	(23,692,247)	23,953,697	891,743	17,567,933	(74,994,895)	8,466,157
Per Common Share Data						
Weighted-Average Common Shares:						
Basic	17,440,994	19,328,414	20,617,890	21,924,490	22,181,003	19,327,938
Diluted	17,440,994	23,069,622	20,617,890	21,924,490	22,181,003	19,327,938
Net increase/(decrease) in net assets resulting from operations per average share:						
Basic	\$ (1.36)	\$ 1.24	\$ 0.04	\$ 0.80	\$ (3.38)	\$ 0.44
Diluted	(1.36)	1.14	0.04	0.80	(3.38)	0.44
Net asset value per share ⁽¹⁾	10.22	11.38	9.89	9.64	8.66	12.08
Market price at year-end	N/A	6.55	5.22	5.45	5.03	9.37
Distributions declared	—	0.32	—	—	0.04	2.76
Shares Outstanding at Period-End	16,874,316	17,564,244	19,762,647	21,246,345	22,181,003	22,181,003
Balance Sheet Data⁽³⁾						
Total Assets ⁽²⁾	\$ 258,042,472	\$ 288,564,089	\$ 330,219,554	\$ 381,682,536	\$ 300,964,426	\$ 397,843,071
5.25% Convertible Senior Notes due 2018	—	—	—	68,382,549	67,512,798	66,649,047
4.75% Convertible Senior Notes due 2023	38,897,646	38,803,635	38,434,511	—	—	—
Total Liabilities	85,526,674	88,646,800	134,841,395	176,919,670	108,835,616	129,832,126
Net Assets	172,515,798	199,917,289	195,378,159	204,762,866	192,128,810	268,010,945

(1) Net asset value per share is based on basic shares outstanding at the end of the period.

- (2) During the year ended December 31, 2015, total assets decreased due to a declared dividend, which was paid on December 31, 2015. During the year ended December 31, 2016, total assets and net assets decreased due to a change in unrealized depreciation of investments and net realized losses on investments. During the year ended December 31, 2017, total assets and net assets increased due to a change in unrealized appreciation of investments and net realized gains on investments. During the year ended December 31, 2018, total assets and net assets decreased due to a decrease in net unrealized appreciation of investments and net realized losses on investments. During the year ended December 31, 2019, total assets decreased due to a lower investment in U.S. Treasury bill and net assets increased due to an increase in net unrealized appreciation of investments and net realized gains on investments. During the quarter ended March 31, 2020 total assets decreased due to a change in unrealized depreciation of investments and net loss, offset by realized gains on investments. For further discussion of factors that affected our total assets and net assets refer to “Part II, Item 7 — Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations — Results of Operations” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Part I, Item 2 — Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations — Results of Operations” in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q.
- (3) Deferred debt issuance costs of \$1,947,572 as of December 31, 2015 related to the Company’s issuance of the 5.25% Convertible Senior Notes due 2018 were previously classified as “Deferred financing costs” as of December 31, 2015. In accordance with ASU 2015-03, this balance has been retrospectively reclassified as a direct deduction from the 5.25% Convertible Senior Notes due 2018. Refer to “Part II, Item 8 — Financial Statements and Supplementary Data — Note 10 — Debt Capital Activities” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K for further detail.
- (4) Due to our change in tax status to a RIC from a C Corporation, the associated accrued benefits from and provisions for taxes from previous years were reversed for the year ended December 31, 2015. During the year ended December 31, 2017, we recognized a net benefit from taxes on unrealized depreciation of \$2,757,070 despite recording a net change in unrealized appreciation of approximately \$34.8 million. The net tax benefit from taxes on unrealized depreciation for the year ended December 31, 2017 was the result of an approximately \$4.1 million decrease in built-in gains tax liability due to the recently passed tax legislation that reduced the U.S. corporate federal income tax rate from 35% to 21%, partially offset by a \$1.3 million increase in the net deferred tax liability generated by the Taxable Subsidiaries. During the year ended December 31, 2018, in anticipation of the end of the RIC built-in gain measurement period, we reversed the accrual of related potential tax liabilities of approximately \$6.1 million. Refer to “Part II, Item 8 — Financial Statements and Supplementary Data — Note 9 — Income Taxes” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Part I, Item 1 — Financial Statements and Supplementary Data — Note 9 — Income Taxes” in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for further detail.

RISK FACTORS

Investing in our securities involves a high degree of risk. Before deciding whether to invest in our securities, you should carefully consider the risks and uncertainties described in the section titled “Risk Factors” in the applicable prospectus supplement and any related free writing prospectus, and discussed in the section titled “Risk Factors” in Part I, Item 1A our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, the section titled “Risk Factors” in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, and any subsequent filings we have made with the SEC that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus or any prospectus supplement, together with other information in this prospectus, the documents incorporated by reference in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement, and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize for use in connection with this offering. The risks described in these documents are not the only ones we face. Additional risks and uncertainties that we are unaware of, or that we currently believe are not material, may also become important factors that adversely affect our business. Past financial performance may not be a reliable indicator of future performance, and historical trends should not be used to anticipate results or trends in future periods. If any of these risks actually occurs, our business, reputation, financial condition, results of operations, revenue, and future prospects could be seriously harmed. This could cause our net asset value and the trading price of our securities to decline, resulting in a loss of all or part of your investment. Please also read carefully the section titled “Cautionary Statement Regarding Forward-Looking Statements” in this prospectus.

CAUTIONARY STATEMENT REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements that involve substantial risks and uncertainties. These forward-looking statements are not historical facts, but rather are based on current expectations, estimates and projections about us, our current and prospective portfolio investments, our industry, our beliefs, and our assumptions. Words such as “anticipates,” “expects,” “intends,” “plans,” “will,” “may,” “continue,” “believes,” “seeks,” “estimates,” “would,” “could,” “should,” “targets,” “projects,” and variations of these words and similar expressions are intended to identify forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus involve risks and uncertainties, including, without limitation, statements as to:

- the effect and consequences of the novel coronavirus (“COVID-19”) public health crisis on matters including global, U.S. and local economies, our business operations and continuity, potential disruption to our portfolio companies, tightened availability to capital and financing, the health and productivity of our employees, the ability of third-party providers to continue uninterrupted service, and the regulatory environment in which we operate;
- our future operating results;
- our business prospects and the prospects of our portfolio companies;
- the impact of investments that we expect to make;
- our contractual arrangements and relationships with third parties;
- the dependence of our future success on the general economy and its impact on the industries in which we invest;
- the ability of our portfolio companies to achieve their objectives;
- our expected financings and investments;
- the adequacy of our cash resources and working capital; and
- the timing of cash flows, if any, from the operations of our portfolio companies.

These statements are not guarantees of future performance and are subject to risks, uncertainties, and other factors, some of which are beyond our control and difficult to predict and could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed or forecasted in the forward-looking statements, including without limitation:

- an economic downturn could impair our portfolio companies' ability to continue to operate, which could lead to the loss of some or all of our investments in such portfolio companies;
- an economic downturn could disproportionately impact the market sectors in which a significant portion of our portfolio is concentrated, causing us to suffer losses in our portfolio;
- a contraction of available credit and/or an inability to access the equity markets could impair our investment activities;
- interest rate volatility could adversely affect our results, particularly because we use leverage as part of our investment strategy; and
- the risks, uncertainties and other factors we identify in the section titled "Risk Factors" in this prospectus and in Part I, Item 1A of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, and those discussed in other documents we file with the SEC.

Although we believe that the assumptions on which these forward-looking statements are based are reasonable, any of those assumptions could prove to be inaccurate, and as a result, the forward-looking statements based on those assumptions also could be inaccurate. Important assumptions include our ability to originate new investments, certain margins and levels of profitability and the availability of additional capital. In light of these and other uncertainties, the inclusion of a projection or forward-looking statement in this prospectus should not be regarded as a representation by us that our plans and objectives will be achieved. These risks and uncertainties include those described or identified in "Risk Factors" in Part I, Item 1A of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, in Part II, Item 1A of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, and elsewhere in this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus, including the documents we incorporate by reference. You should not place undue reliance on these forward-looking statements, which are based on information available to us as of the applicable date of this prospectus, any applicable prospectus supplement or free writing prospectus, including any documents incorporated by reference, and while we believe such information forms, or will form, a reasonable basis for such statements, such information may be limited or incomplete, and our statements should not be read to indicate that we have conducted an exhaustive inquiry into, or review of, all potentially available relevant information. These statements are inherently uncertain and investors are cautioned not to unduly rely on these statements. The forward-looking statements in this prospectus are excluded from the safe harbor protection provided by Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act.

USE OF PROCEEDS

We intend to use the net proceeds from the sale of our securities pursuant to this prospectus for general corporate purposes, which may include investing in securities consistent with our investment objective, repayment of outstanding indebtedness, and other general corporate purposes. We are continuously identifying, reviewing and, to the extent consistent with our investment objective, funding new investments. As a result, we typically raise capital as we deem appropriate to fund such new investments. The applicable prospectus supplement or a free writing prospectus that we have authorized for use relating to an offering will more fully identify the use of the proceeds from such offering. We will also use a portion of any such proceeds to pay operating expenses, and other expenses such as due diligence expenses relating to potential new investments. We anticipate that substantially all of the net proceeds of any such offering will be used for the above purposes within six to twelve months, depending on the availability of investment opportunities that are consistent with our investment objectives and market conditions, except for such amounts as may be retained for purposes of funding our ongoing operations subsequent to the completion of any such offering. We cannot assure you we will achieve our targeted investment pace. If proceeds are not immediately used for investments, then we will invest the net proceeds of any such offering primarily in cash, cash equivalents, U.S. government securities and other high-quality debt investments that mature in one year or less from the date of investment.

PRICE RANGE OF COMMON STOCK AND DISTRIBUTIONS

Our common stock is traded on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “SSSS”. The following table sets forth, for each fiscal quarter after December 31, 2017, the net asset value, or “NAV,” per share of our common stock, the high and low closing prices for our common stock, and such closing prices as a percentage of NAV per share.

	NAV ⁽¹⁾	Price Range		High Close Price as a Premium/ (Discount) to NAV ⁽²⁾	Low Close Price as a Premium/ (Discount) to NAV ⁽²⁾
		High	Low		
Fiscal 2020					
Second Quarter (through June 30, 2020)	\$ *	\$ 9.19	\$ 5.31	*%	*%
First Quarter	10.22	7.00	3.61	(31.5)	(64.7)
Fiscal 2019					
Fourth Quarter	\$ 11.38	\$ 6.90	\$ 5.75	(39.4)%	(49.5)%
Third Quarter	11.24	6.66	6.13	(40.7)	(45.5)
Second Quarter	10.75	7.19	6.13	(33.1)	(43.0)
First Quarter	10.75	8.37	5.20	(22.1)	(51.6)
Fiscal 2018					
Fourth Quarter	\$ 9.89	\$ 7.22	\$ 5.12	(27.0)%	(48.2)%
Third Quarter	10.58	7.35	6.81	(30.5)	(35.6)
Second Quarter	10.46	7.50	6.68	(28.3)	(36.1)
First Quarter	9.99	9.18	5.58	(8.1)	(44.1)

(1) NAV per share is determined as of the last day in the relevant quarter and therefore may not reflect the NAV per share on the date of the high and low close prices. The NAV per share figures shown are based on outstanding shares at the end of each period.

(2) Calculated as the respective high or low close sales price divided by net asset value and subtracting 1.

* Not determinable as of the date of this prospectus.

On June 30, 2020, the last reported sales price of our common stock was \$8.47 per share. As of June 30, 2020, we had approximately 3 stockholders of record.

Shares of BDCs may trade at a market price that is less than the value of the net assets attributable to those shares. The possibility that our shares of common stock will trade at premiums that are unsustainable over the long-term or at a discount from net asset value are separate and distinct from the risk that our net asset value will decrease. Since the completion of our IPO in May 2011, our shares of common stock have traded at both a discount and a premium to the net assets attributable to those shares. As of June 30, 2020, our shares of common stock traded at a discount equal to approximately 17.1% of the net assets attributable to those shares based upon our \$10.22 NAV per share as of March 31, 2020. It is not possible to predict whether the shares offered hereby will trade at, above, or below net asset value.

The following table lists the distributions, including dividends and returns of capital, if any, per share that we have declared since our formation. The table is divided by fiscal year according to record date:

Date Declared	Record Date	Payment Date	Amount per Share
Fiscal 2015:			
November 4, 2015 ⁽¹⁾	November 16, 2015	December 31, 2015	\$ 2.76
Fiscal 2016:			
August 3, 2016 ⁽²⁾	August 16, 2016	August 24, 2016	0.04
Fiscal 2019:			
November 5, 2019 ⁽³⁾	December 2, 2019	December 12, 2019	0.20
December 20, 2019 ⁽⁴⁾	December 31, 2019	January 15, 2020	0.12
Total			\$ 3.12

- (1) The distribution was paid in cash or shares of our common stock at the election of stockholders, although the total amount of cash distributed to all stockholders was limited to approximately 50% of the total distribution to be paid to all stockholders. As a result of stockholder elections, the distribution consisted of approximately 2,860,903 shares of common stock issued in lieu of cash, or approximately 14.8% of our outstanding shares prior to the distribution, as well as cash of \$26,358,885. The number of shares of common stock comprising the stock portion was calculated based on a price of \$9.425 per share, which equaled the average of the volume weighted-average trading price per share of our common stock on December 28, 29 and 30, 2015. None of the \$2.76 per share distribution represented a return of capital.
- (2) Of the total distribution of \$887,240 paid on August 24, 2016, \$820,753 represented a distribution from realized gains, and \$66,487 represented a return of capital.
- (3) 100% of the \$3,512,849 distribution paid on December 12, 2019 represented a distribution from realized gains. None of the distribution represented a return of capital.
- (4) 100% of the \$2,107,709 distribution paid on January 15, 2020 represented a distribution from realized gains. None of the distribution represented a return of capital.

We intend to focus on making capital gains-based investments from which we will derive primarily capital gains. As a consequence, we do not anticipate that we will pay distributions on a quarterly basis or become a predictable distributor of distributions, and we expect that our distributions, if any, will be much less consistent than the distributions of other BDCs that primarily make debt investments. If there are earnings or realized capital gains to be distributed, we intend to declare and pay a distribution at least annually. The amount of realized capital gains available for distribution to stockholders will be impacted by our tax status.

Our current intention is to make any future distributions out of assets legally available therefrom in the form of additional shares of our common stock under our DRIP, except in the case of stockholders who elect to receive dividends and/or long-term capital gains distributions in cash. Under the DRIP, if a stockholder owns shares of common stock registered in its own name, the stockholder will have all cash distributions (net of any applicable withholding) automatically reinvested in additional shares of common stock unless the stockholder opts out of our DRIP by delivering a written notice to our dividend paying agent prior to the record date of the next dividend or distribution. Any distributions reinvested under the plan will nevertheless be treated as received by the U.S. stockholder for U.S. federal income tax purposes, although no cash distribution has been made. As a result, if a stockholder does not elect to opt out of the DRIP, it will be required to pay applicable federal, state and local taxes on any reinvested dividends even though such stockholder will not receive a corresponding cash distribution. Stockholders that hold shares in the name of a broker or financial intermediary should contact the broker or financial intermediary regarding any election to receive distributions in cash.

So long as we qualify and maintain our tax treatment as a RIC, we generally will not pay corporate-level U.S. federal and state income taxes on any ordinary income or capital gains that we distribute at least annually to our stockholders as dividends. Rather, any tax liability related to income earned by the RIC will represent obligations of our investors and will not be reflected in our consolidated financial statements. See “Note 2—Significant Accounting Policies—U.S. Federal and State Income Taxes” of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and “Note 9—Income Taxes” to our condensed consolidated financial statements as of March 31, 2020 of our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for more information. The taxable subsidiaries included in our consolidated financial statements are taxable subsidiaries, regardless of whether we are taxed as a RIC. These taxable subsidiaries are not consolidated for income tax purposes and may generate income tax expenses as a result of their ownership of the portfolio companies. Such income tax expenses and deferred taxes, if any, will be reflected in our consolidated financial statements.

SENIOR SECURITIES

Information about our senior securities is shown in the following tables as of the end of each fiscal year since our IPO. There were no senior securities outstanding as of December 31, 2012 and 2011. The report of our independent registered public accounting firm, Marcum LLP, on the senior securities table, as of December 31, 2019, is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. The report of our former independent registered public accounting firm, Deloitte & Touche LLP, on the senior securities table, as of December 31, 2018, 2017, 2016 and 2015, is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part.

Class and Year	Total Amount Outstanding Exclusive of Treasury Securities ⁽¹⁾	Asset Coverage Ratio Per Unit ⁽²⁾	Involuntary Liquidation Preference Per Unit ⁽³⁾	Average Market Value Per Unit ⁽⁴⁾
4.75% Convertible Senior Notes due 2023				
Fiscal 2020 (through March 31, 2020) (unaudited)	\$ 40,000,000	\$ 5,313	—	N/A
Fiscal 2019	40,000,000	5,998	—	N/A
Fiscal 2018	40,000,000	5,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2017	—	3,968	—	N/A
Fiscal 2016	—	3,784	—	N/A
Fiscal 2015	—	4,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2014	—	4,286	—	N/A
Fiscal 2013	—	5,173	—	N/A
Fiscal 2012	—	—	—	N/A
Fiscal 2011	—	—	—	N/A
5.25% Convertible Senior Notes due 2018				
Fiscal 2020 (through March 31, 2020) (unaudited) ⁽⁵⁾	\$ —	\$ 5,313	—	
Fiscal 2019 ⁽⁵⁾	—	5,998	—	
Fiscal 2018 ⁽⁵⁾	—	5,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2017	69,000,000	3,968	—	N/A
Fiscal 2016	69,000,000	3,784	—	N/A
Fiscal 2015	69,000,000	4,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2014	69,000,000	4,286	—	N/A
Fiscal 2013	69,000,000	5,173	—	N/A
Fiscal 2012	—	—	—	N/A
Fiscal 2011	—	—	—	N/A
Credit Facility				
Fiscal 2020 (through March 31, 2020) (unaudited) ⁽⁶⁾	\$ —	\$ 5,313	—	
Fiscal 2019 ⁽⁶⁾	—	5,998	—	N/A
Fiscal 2018	—	5,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2017	—	3,968	—	N/A
Fiscal 2016 ⁽⁷⁾	—	3,784	—	N/A
Fiscal 2015	—	4,884	—	N/A
Fiscal 2014	18,000,000	4,286	—	N/A
Fiscal 2013	—	5,173	—	N/A
Fiscal 2012	—	—	—	N/A
Fiscal 2011	—	—	—	N/A

(1) Total gross amount of each class of senior securities outstanding at the end of the period presented, before deduction of discount and debt issuance costs.

- (2) Asset coverage per unit for a class of senior securities is the ratio of the carrying value of our total consolidated assets, less all liabilities and indebtedness not represented by senior securities, to the aggregate amount of senior securities representing indebtedness. Asset coverage per unit is expressed in terms of dollar amounts per \$1,000 of indebtedness.
- (3) The amount to which such class of senior security would be entitled upon the voluntary liquidation of the issuer in preference to any security junior to it. The “—” in this column indicates that the SEC expressly does not require this information to be disclosed for the types of senior securities representing indebtedness issued by SuRo Capital Corp. as of the stated time periods.
- (4) Not applicable for any of the senior securities because they are not registered for public trading.
- (5) The 5.25% Convertible Senior Notes due 2018 were repaid in full with interest on September 15, 2018.
- (6) Represents amounts under the \$12.0 million senior secured revolving Credit Facility with Western Alliance Bank which matured on May 31, 2019.
- (7) The \$18.0 million SVB Credit Facility expired pursuant to its terms on December 31, 2016.

BUSINESS

Our business is described in “Part I — Item 1 – Business” of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, which is incorporated by reference herein.

PORTFOLIO COMPANIES

The tables, which set forth certain information as of March 31, 2020 and December 31, 2019 regarding each portfolio company in which we had a debt or equity investment, are in our most recent Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q and our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, respectively, which are incorporated by reference herein. The general terms of our expected investments are described in “Part I, Item 1 — Business — Investment Strategy” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K. Other than these investments, our only formal relationships with our portfolio companies will be the managerial assistance we may provide upon request and the board observer or participation rights we may receive in connection with our investment.

PORTFOLIO MANAGEMENT

The management of our investment portfolio is the responsibility of our management and its five-member investment committee. The member of the investment committee who is primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of our portfolio is Mark D. Klein. For more information regarding the business experience of Mr. Klein, see “Part III, Item 10 — Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Our investment committee is led by Mr. Klein, Chairman of our Board of Directors, Chief Executive Officer and President. We consider Mr. Klein to be our portfolio manager.

The table below shows the dollar range of shares of our common stock beneficially owned by each of our portfolio managers as of June 30, 2020.

Name of Portfolio Manager	Dollar Range of Equity Securities in SuRo Capital⁽¹⁾⁽²⁾
Mark Klein	Over \$1,000,000

(1) The dollar range of equity securities beneficially owned in us is based on a price per share of our common stock of \$8.47, the closing price of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market on June 30, 2020.

(2) The dollar ranges are: None, \$1 – \$10,000, \$10,001 – \$50,000, \$50,001 – \$100,000, \$100,001 – \$500,000, \$500,001 – \$1,000,000, or Over \$1,000,000.

The following information pertains to members of our investment committee who are not executive officers or directors of SuRo Capital Corp.

Please also refer to “Information about the Nominees and Directors” and “Information about the Executive Officers Who Are Not Directors” in our most recent definitive proxy statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for more information relating to the management of the Company.

CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

Please refer to “Corporate Governance” in our most recent definitive proxy statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for information relating to the management of the Company.

EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

Please refer to “Compensation of Executive Officers” in our most recent definitive proxy statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for information relating to the management of the Company.

RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS AND CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS

Please refer to “Related Party Transactions and Certain Relationships” in our most recent definitive proxy statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for information relating to the management of the Company.

SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

Please refer to “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management” in our most recent definitive proxy statement, which is incorporated by reference into this prospectus, for information relating to the management of the Company.

REGULATION AS A BUSINESS DEVELOPMENT COMPANY

We are subject to regulation as described in “Part I, Item 1 – Business” of our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, which is incorporated by reference herein.

DETERMINATION OF NET ASSET VALUE

We determine the net asset value of our investment portfolio after the conclusion of each fiscal quarter in connection with the preparation of our annual and quarterly reports filed under the Exchange Act, or more frequently if required under the 1940 Act.

Securities that are publicly traded are generally valued at the close price on the valuation date; however, if they remain subject to lock-up restrictions they are discounted accordingly. Securities that are not publicly traded or for which there are no readily available market quotations, including securities that trade on secondary markets for private securities, are valued at fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors. In connection with that determination, our executive officers and investment professionals will prepare portfolio company valuations using, when available, the most recent portfolio company financial statements and forecasts. We also engage an independent valuation firm to perform independent valuations of our investments that are not publicly traded or for which there are no readily available market quotations. We may also engage an independent valuation firm to perform independent valuations of any securities that trade on private secondary markets, but are not otherwise publicly traded, where there is a lack of appreciable trading or a wide disparity in recently reported trades.

For those securities that are not publicly traded or for which there are no readily available market quotations, our Board of Directors, with the assistance of its valuation committee, will use the recommended valuations as prepared by our executive officers and investment professionals and the independent valuation firm, respectively, as a component of the foundation for its final fair value determination. Due to the uncertainty inherent in the valuation process, such estimates of fair value may differ significantly from the values that would have resulted had others made the determination using the same or different procedures or had a readily available market for the securities existed, and the differences could be material. Additionally, changes in the market environment and other events that may occur over the life of the investments may cause the gains or losses ultimately realized on these investments to be different than the gains or losses implied by the valuation currently assigned to such investments. For those investments that are publicly traded, we generally record unrealized appreciation or depreciation based on changes in the market value of the securities as of the valuation date. Publicly traded securities that remain subject to lock-up restrictions are discounted accordingly. For those investments that are not publicly traded and for which there are no readily available market quotations, we record unrealized depreciation on such investments when we believe that an investment has become impaired and record unrealized appreciation if we believe that the underlying portfolio company has appreciated in value and our equity security has also appreciated in value. Changes in fair value are recorded in the consolidated statement of operations as the net change in unrealized appreciation or depreciation.

We generally determine the fair value of our investments by considering a number of factors. The following represent factors that, among others, could impact our fair value determinations:

1. Public trading of our portfolio securities, taking into consideration lock-up requirements and liquidity;
2. Active trading of our portfolio securities on a private secondary market, where we have determined that there is meaningful volume and the transactions are considered arm's length by sophisticated investors;
3. Qualified funding rounds in the companies in which we invested, where there is meaningful and reputable information available on size, valuation and investors; and
4. Additional investments by us in current portfolio companies, where the price of the new investment differs materially from prior investments.

There is inherent subjectivity in determining the fair value of our investments. We expect that most of our portfolio investments, other than those for which market quotations are readily available and that may be sold without restriction, will be valued at fair value as determined in good faith by our Board of Directors, with the assistance of our valuation committee. Furthermore, when calculating net asset value, we also consider our recognition of a deferred tax liability for unrealized gains on investments for those investments held in our taxable subsidiaries. See "Part II, Item 8 — Note 1 — Nature of Operations" to our consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2019 for a list of our taxable subsidiaries in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Determinations in Connection with Offerings

In connection with future offerings of shares of our common stock, our Board of Directors or an authorized committee thereof will be required to make a determination of our net asset value and a good faith determination that we are not selling shares of our common stock at a price below the then current net asset value of our common stock at the time at which the sale is made. Our Board of Directors or an authorized committee thereof will consider the following factors, among others, in making such a determination:

- the net asset value of our common stock disclosed in the most recent periodic report that we filed with the SEC;
- our management's assessment of whether any material change in the net asset value of our common stock has occurred (including through the realization of gains on the sale of our portfolio securities) during the period beginning on the date of the most recently disclosed net asset value of our common stock and ending as of a time within 48 hours (excluding Sundays and holidays) of the sale of our common stock; and
- the magnitude of the difference between (i) a value that our Board of Directors or an authorized committee thereof has determined reflects the current (as of a time within 48 hours, excluding Sundays and holidays) net asset value of our common stock, which is generally based upon the net asset value of our common stock disclosed in the most recent periodic report that we filed with the SEC, as adjusted to reflect our management's assessment of any material change in the net asset value of our common stock since the date of the most recently disclosed net asset value of our common stock, and (ii) the offering price of the shares of our common stock in the proposed offering.

These processes and procedures are part of our compliance policies and procedures. Records will be made contemporaneously with all determinations described in this section and these records will be maintained with other records that we are required to maintain under the 1940 Act.

SALES OF COMMON STOCK BELOW NET ASSET VALUE

Our stockholders may from time to time vote to allow us to issue common stock at a price below the NAV per share of our common stock. In such an approval, our stockholders may not specify a maximum discount below NAV at which we are able to issue our common stock. In order to sell shares pursuant to such a stockholder authorization:

- a majority of our independent directors who have no financial interest in the sale must have approved the sale; and
- a majority of such directors, who are not interested persons of SuRo Capital, in consultation with the underwriter or underwriters of the offering if it is to be underwritten, must have determined in good faith, and as of a time immediately prior to the first solicitation by us or on our behalf of firm commitments to purchase such shares or immediately prior to the issuance of such shares, that the price at which such shares are to be sold is not less than a price which closely approximates the market value of those shares, less any underwriting commission or discount.

Any offering of common stock below NAV per share will be designed to raise capital for investment in accordance with our investment objectives and business strategies.

In making a determination that an offering below NAV per share is in our and our stockholders' best interests, our Board of Directors would consider a variety of factors including:

- The effect that an offering below NAV per share would have on our stockholders, including the potential dilution they would experience as a result of the offering;
- The amount per share by which the offering price per share and the net proceeds per share are less than the most recently determined NAV per share;
- The relationship of recent market prices of our common stock to NAV per share and the potential impact of the offering on the market price per share of our common stock;
- Whether the proposed offering price would closely approximate the market value of our shares;
- The potential market impact of being able to raise capital during the current financial market difficulties;
- The nature of any new investors anticipated to acquire shares in the offering;
- The anticipated rate of return on and quality, type and availability of investments to be funded with the proceeds from the offering, if any; and
- The leverage available to us, both before and after any offering, and the terms thereof.

Sales by us of our common stock at a discount from NAV pose potential risks for our existing stockholders whether or not they participate in the offering, as well as for new investors who participate in the offering.

The following three headings and accompanying tables will explain and provide hypothetical examples on the impact of an offering at a price less than NAV per share on three different sets of investors:

- existing stockholders who do not purchase any shares in the offering;
- existing stockholders who purchase a relatively small amount of shares in the offering or a relatively large amount of shares in the offering; and
- new investors who become stockholders by purchasing shares in the offering.

Impact on Existing Stockholders who do not Participate in the Offering

Our existing stockholders who do not participate in an offering below NAV per share or who do not buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) face the greatest potential risks. These stockholders will experience an immediate decrease (often called dilution) in the NAV of the shares they hold and their NAV per share. These stockholders will also experience a disproportionately greater decrease in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than the increase we will experience in our assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

The following table illustrates the level of NAV dilution that would be experienced by a nonparticipating stockholder in four different hypothetical offerings of different sizes and levels of discount from NAV per share. Actual sales prices and discounts may differ from the presentation below.

The examples assume that Company XYZ has 1,000,000 common shares outstanding, \$15,000,000 in total assets and \$5,000,000 in total liabilities. The current NAV and NAV per share are thus \$10,000,000 and \$10.00, respectively. The table illustrates the dilutive effect on nonparticipating Stockholder A of (1) an offering of 50,000 shares (5% of the outstanding shares) at \$9.50 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 5% discount from NAV), (2) an offering of 100,000 shares (10% of the outstanding shares) at \$9.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 10% discount from NAV) and (3) an offering of 250,000 shares (25% of the outstanding shares) at \$8.00 per share after offering expenses and commissions (a 20% discount from NAV). The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount to the most recently determined NAV.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 5% Offering at 5% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount		
		Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	
Offering Price								
Price per Share to Public ⁽¹⁾		\$ 10.00		\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42		
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.50		\$ 9.00		\$ 8.00		
Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV								
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,050,000	5.00%	1,100,000	10.00%	1,250,000	25.00%	
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.98	(0.24)%	\$ 9.91	(0.91)%	\$ 9.60	(4.00)%	
Dilution to Nonparticipating Stockholder A								
Share Dilution								
Shares Held by Stockholder A	10,000	10,000		10,000		10,000		
Percentage Outstanding Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.95%	(4.76)%	0.91%	(9.09)%	0.80%	(20.00)%	
NAV Dilution								
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 100,000	\$ 99,762	(0.24)%	\$ 99,091	(0.91)%	\$ 96,000	(4.00)%	
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share)	\$ 100,000	\$ 100,000		\$ 100,000		\$ 100,000		
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	\$ —	\$ (238)		\$ (909)		\$ (4,000)		
NAV Dilution per Share								
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A		\$ 9.98		\$ 9.91		\$ 9.60		
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00	\$ 10.00		\$ 10.00		\$ 10.00		
NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)		\$ (0.02)		\$ (0.09)		\$ (0.40)		
Percentage NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)			(0.24)%		(0.91)%		(4.00)%	

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by us

Impact on Existing Stockholders who do Participate in the Offering

Our existing stockholders who participate in an offering below NAV per share or who buy additional shares in the secondary market at the same or lower price as we obtain in the offering (after expenses and commissions) will experience the same types of NAV dilution as the nonparticipating stockholders, albeit at a lower level, to the extent they purchase less than the same percentage of the discounted offering as their interest in our shares immediately prior to the offering. The level of NAV dilution to such stockholders will decrease as the number of shares such stockholders purchase increases. Existing stockholders who buy more than their proportionate percentage will experience NAV dilution but will, in contrast to existing stockholders who purchase less than their proportionate share of the offering, experience an increase (often called accretion) in NAV per share over their investment per share and will also experience a disproportionately greater increase in their participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests due to the offering. The level of accretion will increase as the excess number of shares purchased by such stockholder increases. Even a stockholder who over-participates will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such stockholder does not participate, in which case such a stockholder will experience NAV dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These stockholders may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and the level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution and accretion in the hypothetical 25% offering at a 20% discount from the prior chart (Example 3) for a stockholder that acquires shares equal to (1) 50% of its proportionate share of the offering (i.e., 1,250 shares, which is 0.5% of an offering of 250,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share) and (2) 150% of such percentage (i.e., 3,750 shares, which is 1.5% of an offering of 250,000 shares rather than its 1.0% proportionate share). The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for this example based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	50% Participation		150% Participation	
		Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
Offering Price					
Price per Share to Public(1)		\$ 8.42		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 8.00		\$ 8.00	
Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV					
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,250,000	25.00%	1,250,000	25.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.60	(4.00)%	\$ 9.60	(4.00)%
Dilution to Nonparticipating Stockholder A					
Share Dilution					
Shares Held by Stockholder A	10,000	11,250	12.50%	13,750	37.50%
Percentage Outstanding Held by Stockholder A	1.00%	0.90%	(10.00)%	1.10%	10.00%
NAV Dilution					
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ 100,000	\$ 108,000	8.00%	\$ 132,000	32.00%
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share)	\$ 100,000	\$ 110,525		\$ 131,575	
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	\$ —	\$ (2,525)		\$ 425	
NAV Dilution per Share					
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	\$ 9.60	\$ 9.60		\$ 9.60	
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.82	(1.76)%	\$ 9.57	(4.31)%
NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	\$ (0.22)	\$ (0.22)		\$ 0.03	
Percentage NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)			(2.28)%		0.32%

(1) Assumes 5% in selling compensation and expenses paid by us

Impact on New Investors

Investors who are not currently stockholders, but who participate in an offering below NAV and whose investment per share is greater than the resulting NAV per share due to selling compensation and expenses paid by us will experience an immediate decrease, albeit small, in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares (Example 1 below). On the other hand, investors who are not currently stockholders, but who participate in an offering below NAV per share and whose investment per share is also less than the resulting NAV per share will experience an immediate increase in the NAV of their shares and their NAV per share compared to the price they pay for their shares (Examples 2 and 3 below). These latter investors will experience a disproportionately greater participation in our earnings and assets and their voting power than our increase in assets, potential earning power and voting interests. These investors will, however, be subject to the risk that we may make additional discounted offerings in which such new stockholder does not participate, in which case such new stockholder will experience dilution as described above in such subsequent offerings. These investors may also experience a decline in the market price of their shares, which often reflects to some degree announced or potential decreases in NAV per share. This decrease could be more pronounced as the size of the offering and level of discount to NAV increases.

The following chart illustrates the level of dilution or accretion for new investors that would be experienced by a new investor in the same hypothetical discounted offerings as described in the first chart above. The illustration is for a new investor who purchases the same percentage (1.00%) of the shares in the offering as Stockholder A in the prior examples held immediately prior to the offering. The prospectus supplement pursuant to which any discounted offering is made will include a chart for these examples based on the actual number of shares in such offering and the actual discount from the most recently determined NAV per share.

	Prior to Sale Below NAV	Example 1 5% Offering at 5% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount		Example 2 10% Offering at 10% Discount	
		Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change	Following Sale	% Change
Offering Price							
Price per Share to Public ⁽¹⁾		\$ 10.00		\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42	
Net Proceeds per Share to Issuer		\$ 9.50		\$ 9.00		\$ 8.00	
Increase in Shares and Decrease to NAV							
Total Shares Outstanding	1,000,000	1,050,000	5.00%	1,100,000	10.00%	1,250,000	25.00%
NAV per Share	\$ 10.00	\$ 9.98	(0.24)%	\$ 9.91	(0.91)%	\$ 9.60	(4.00)%
Dilution to Nonparticipating Stockholder A							
Share Dilution							
Shares Held by Stockholder A	—	500		1,000		2,500	
Percentage Outstanding Held by Stockholder A	—%	0.05%		0.09%		0.20%	
NAV Dilution							
Total NAV Held by Stockholder A	\$ —	\$ 4,988		\$ 9,909		\$ 24,000	
Total Investment by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share)	\$ —	\$ 5,000		\$ 9,470		\$ 21,050	
Total Dilution to Stockholder A (Total NAV Less Total Investment)	\$ —	\$ (12)		\$ 439		\$ 2,950	
NAV Dilution per Share							
NAV per Share Held by Stockholder A	\$ 9.98			\$ 9.91		\$ 9.60	
Investment per Share Held by Stockholder A (Assumed to be \$10 per Share on Shares Held Prior to Sale)	\$ 10.00			\$ 9.47		\$ 8.42	
NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV per Share Less Investment per Share)	\$ (0.02)			\$ 0.44		\$ 1.18	
Percentage NAV Dilution per Share Experienced by Stockholder A (NAV Dilution per Share Divided by Investment per Share)			(0.20)%		4.64%		14.01%

DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLAN

We have adopted a DRIP, through which all dividends are paid to stockholders in the form of additional shares of our common stock, unless a stockholder elects to receive cash as provided below. In this way, a stockholder can maintain an undiluted investment in us and still allow us to pay out the required distributable income.

No action is required on the part of a registered stockholder to receive a distribution in shares of our common stock. A registered stockholder may elect to receive an entire distribution in cash by notifying American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, the plan administrator and our transfer agent and registrar, in writing so that such notice is received by the plan administrator no later than 10 days prior to the record date for distributions to stockholders. The plan administrator will set up an account for shares acquired through the plan for each stockholder who has not elected to receive distributions in cash and hold such shares in non-certificated form. Upon request by a participant, received in writing not less than 10 days prior to the record date, the plan administrator will, instead of crediting shares to the participant's account, issue a certificate registered in the participant's name for the number of whole shares of our common stock and a check for any fractional share.

Those stockholders whose shares are held by a broker or other financial intermediary may receive distributions in cash by notifying their broker or other financial intermediary of their election.

We intend to use only newly-issued shares to implement the plan if our shares are trading at a premium to net asset value. The number of shares to be issued to a stockholder is determined by dividing the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to such stockholder by the market price per share of our common stock at the close of regular trading on the Nasdaq Capital Market on the valuation date for such distribution. Market price per share on that date will be the closing price for such shares on the Nasdaq Capital Market or, if no sale is reported for such day, at the average of their electronically-reported bid and asked prices. The number of shares of our common stock to be outstanding after giving effect to payment of the distribution cannot be established until the value per share at which additional shares will be issued has been determined and elections of our stockholders have been tabulated.

There is no charge to stockholders for receiving their distributions in the form of additional shares of our common stock. The plan administrator's fees for handling distributions in stock are paid by us. There are no brokerage charges with respect to shares we have issued directly as a result of distributions payable in stock. If a participant elects by written or telephonic notice to the plan administrator to have the plan administrator sell part or all of the shares held by the plan administrator in the participant's account and remit the proceeds to the participant, the plan administrator is authorized to deduct a \$15 transaction fee plus brokerage commissions from the proceeds.

Stockholders who receive distributions in the form of stock are subject to the same federal, state and local tax consequences as are stockholders who elect to receive their distributions in cash. A stockholder's basis for determining gain or loss upon the sale of stock received in a distribution from us will be equal to the total dollar amount of the distribution payable to the stockholder. As a result, if you do not elect to opt out of the DRIP, you will be required to pay applicable federal, state and local taxes on any reinvested dividends even though you will not receive a corresponding cash distribution.

The plan may be terminated by us upon notice in writing mailed to each participant at least 30 days prior to any record date for the payment of any dividend or distribution by us. All correspondence concerning the plan should be directed to the plan administrator by mail at 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219 or by phone at (800) 937-5449.

CERTAIN U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following discussion is a general summary of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to our qualification and taxation as a RIC under subchapter M of the Code, and the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our common stock. This summary does not purport to be a complete description of the income tax considerations applicable to such an investment. For example, we have not described tax consequences that we assume to be generally known by investors or certain considerations that may be relevant to certain types of holders subject to special treatment under U.S. federal income tax laws, including stockholders subject to the alternative minimum tax, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, dealers in securities, traders in securities that elect to use a market-to-market method of accounting for their securities holdings, pension plans and trusts, financial institutions, U.S. stockholders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, persons who mark-to-market our shares, persons who hold our shares as part of a “straddle,” “hedge” or “conversion” transaction, partnerships or other pass-through entities, RICs, real estate investment trusts, personal holding companies, persons who acquire our common stock in connection with the performance of services, Non-U.S. stockholders (as defined below) engaged in a trade or business in the United States, persons who have ceased to be U.S. citizens or to be taxed as resident aliens, and individual non-U.S. stockholders present in the United States for 183 days or more during a taxable year. This summary is limited to beneficial owners of our common stock that will hold such common stock as capital assets (within the meaning of the Code). The discussion is based upon the Code, Treasury regulations, and administrative and judicial interpretations, each as of the date of this prospectus and all of which are subject to change, possibly retroactively, which could affect the continuing validity of this discussion. We have not sought and will not seek any ruling from the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) regarding the offering of the common stock. This summary does not discuss any aspects of U.S. estate or gift tax or foreign, state or local tax. It does not discuss the special treatment under U.S. federal income tax laws that could result if we invested in tax-exempt securities or certain other investment assets.

This summary does not discuss the consequences of an investment in our preferred stock, subscription rights to purchase shares of our common stock, debt securities or warrants representing rights to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. The U.S. federal income tax consequences of such an investment will be discussed in the relevant prospectus supplement.

If a partnership (including an entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) holds the shares of our common stock, the tax treatment of a partner in the partnership generally will depend upon the status of the partner, the activities of the partnership and certain determinations made at the partner level. Investors treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes (or investors that are partners in such a partnership), are encouraged to consult with their own tax advisers with respect to the tax consequences relating to the acquisition, ownership and disposition of our common stock.

A “U.S. stockholder” generally is a beneficial owner of common stock who is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- a citizen or individual resident of the United States;
- a corporation or other entity treated as a corporation, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia;
- a trust, if a court within the United States has primary supervision over its administration and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all of its substantive decisions, or if the trust has a valid election in effect under applicable U.S. Treasury regulations to be treated as a U.S. person; or
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source.

As used herein, the term “Non-U.S. stockholder” means a beneficial owner of common stock that is not a U.S. stockholder or a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes. A “Non-U.S. stockholder” does not include an individual present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of disposition of the common stock. Such a stockholder is encouraged to consult his or her own tax adviser regarding U.S. federal income tax consequences of the sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of the common stock.

Tax matters are complicated and the tax consequences to an investor of an investment in our common stock will depend on the facts of his, her or its particular situation. We encourage investors to consult their own tax advisers regarding the specific consequences of such an investment, including tax reporting requirements, the applicability of federal, state, local and foreign tax laws, eligibility for the benefits of any applicable tax treaty and the effect of any possible changes in the tax laws.

Taxation of the Company

Election to be Treated as a RIC

We elected to be taxed as a RIC under the Code beginning with our taxable year ended December 31, 2014, and qualified for taxation as a RIC for such taxable year and each of the subsequent taxable years. We intend to operate in a manner so as to qualify for taxation as a RIC. So long as we maintain our qualification for taxation a RIC, we generally will not be required to pay corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes on any ordinary income or capital gains that we timely distribute to our stockholders as dividends. To qualify for taxation as a RIC, we must, among other things, meet certain source-of-income and asset diversification requirements (as described below). In addition, in order to qualify for the special treatment accorded to RICs, we are required to distribute to our stockholders on a timely basis each year at least 90% of our “investment company taxable income,” which is generally our net ordinary income plus the excess of realized net short-term capital gains over realized net long-term capital losses (the “Annual Distribution Requirement”).

Taxation of the Company as a RIC

If we:

- qualify as a RIC; and
- satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement,

then we will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the portion of our income and capital gains that we timely distribute (or are deemed to distribute) to stockholders. We will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the regular corporate rates on any income, including capital gains not distributed (or deemed distributed) to our stockholders.

We will be subject to a 4% nondeductible U.S. federal excise tax on certain undistributed income unless we distribute in a timely manner each calendar year an amount equal to at least the sum of (1) 98% of our net ordinary income for each calendar year, (2) 98.2% of our capital gains in excess of capital losses for the one-year period ending October 31 in that calendar year and (3) any ordinary income and net capital gains that we recognized for preceding years, but were not distributed during such years and on which we paid no U.S. federal income tax (the “Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement”). While we intend to timely distribute our income and capital gains in order to avoid imposition of this 4% U.S. federal excise tax, we may not be successful in avoiding entirely the imposition of this tax. In that case, we will be liable for the tax only on the amount by which we do not meet the foregoing distribution requirement.

In order to qualify as a RIC for U.S. federal income tax purposes, we must, among other things:

- have in effect an election to be regulated as a BDC under the 1940 Act at all times during each taxable year;
- derive in each taxable year at least 90% of our gross income from dividends, interest, payments with respect to loans of certain securities, gains from the sale of stock or other securities or foreign currencies, other income derived with respect to our business of investing in such stock or securities and net income from “qualified publicly traded partnerships” (the “90% Income Test”);
- diversify our holdings so that at the end of each quarter of the taxable year;
- at least 50% of the value of our assets consists of cash, cash equivalents, U.S. Government securities, securities of other RICs, and other securities if such other securities of any one issuer do not represent more than 5% of the value of our assets or more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of the issuer (the “50% Diversification Test”); and

no more than 25% of the value of our assets is invested in the securities, other than U.S. Government securities or securities of other RICs, of one issuer, of two or more issuers that are controlled, as determined under applicable Code rules, by us and that are engaged in the same or similar or related trades or businesses, or of certain “qualified publicly traded partnerships” (the “25% Diversification Test,” and together with the 50% Diversification Test, the “Diversification Tests”).

If we satisfy the Diversification Tests as of the close of any quarter, we will not fail the Diversification Tests as of the close of a subsequent quarter as a consequence of a discrepancy between the value of our assets and the requirements of the Diversification Tests that is attributable solely to fluctuations in the value of our assets. Rather, we will fail the Diversification Tests as of the end of a subsequent quarter only if such a discrepancy existed immediately after our acquisition of any asset and such discrepancy is wholly or partly the result of that acquisition. In addition, if we fail the Diversification Tests as of the end of any quarter, we will not lose our status as a RIC if we eliminate the discrepancy within thirty days of the end of such quarter and, if we eliminate the discrepancy within that thirty-day period, we will be treated as having satisfied the Diversification Tests as of the end of such quarter for purposes of applying the rule described in the preceding sentence.

We may be required to recognize taxable income in circumstances in which we do not receive cash. For example, if we hold debt obligations that are treated under applicable tax rules as having original issue discount (which may arise if we receive warrants in connection with the origination of a loan or possibly in other circumstances), we must include in income each year a portion of the original issue discount that accrues over the life of the obligation, regardless of whether we receive cash representing such income is received by us in the same taxable year. We may also have to include in income other amounts that we have not yet received in cash, such as contractual payment-in-kind, or PIK, interest (which represents contractual interest added to the loan balance and due at the end of the loan term) dividends and deferred loan origination fees that are paid after origination of the loan or are paid in non-cash compensation such as warrants or stock. Because any original issue discount or other amounts accrued will be included in our investment company taxable income for the year of accrual, we may be required to make a distribution to our stockholders in order to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement and the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement, even though we will not have received any corresponding cash amount.

We will be subject to certain asset coverage ratio requirements under the 1940 Act and financial covenants under loan and credit agreements that could, under certain circumstances, restrict us from making distributions necessary to satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement. See “Part I, Item 1 — Business — Regulation as a Business Development Company — Senior Securities” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K. Moreover, our ability to dispose of assets to meet our distribution requirements may be limited by (1) the illiquid nature of our portfolio and/or (2) other requirements relating to our status as a RIC, including the Diversification Tests. If we dispose of assets in order to meet the Annual Distribution Requirement or the Excise Tax Avoidance Requirement, we may make such dispositions at times that, from an investment standpoint, are not advantageous.

We may be required to sell assets in order to satisfy the Diversification Tests. However, our ability to dispose of assets to meet the Diversification Tests may be limited by the illiquid nature of our portfolio. If we dispose of assets in order to meet the Diversification Tests, we may make such dispositions at times that, from an investment standpoint, are not advantageous and may result in substantial losses.

We may invest in partnerships, including qualified publicly traded partnerships, which may result in our being subject to state, local or foreign income taxes, franchise taxes, or withholding liabilities. To the extent that we invest in entities treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes (other than a “qualified publicly-traded partnership”), we generally must include the items of gross income derived by the partnerships for purposes of the 90% Income Test, and the income that is derived from a partnership (other than a “qualified publicly-traded partnership”) will be treated as qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test only to the extent that such income is attributable to items of income of the partnership which would be qualifying income if realized by us directly.

In order to meet the 90% Income Test, we may establish one or more special purpose corporations to hold assets from which we do not anticipate earning dividend, interest or other qualifying income under the 90% Income Test. Any investments held through a special purpose corporation would generally be subject to U.S. federal income and other taxes, and therefore we can expect to achieve a reduced after-tax yield on such investments.

Certain of our investment practices may be subject to special and complex U.S. federal income tax provisions that may, among other things: (i) disallow, suspend or otherwise limit the allowance of certain losses or deductions; (ii) convert lower-taxed long-term capital gain into higher-taxed short-term capital gain or ordinary income; (iii) convert an ordinary loss or a deduction into a capital loss (the deductibility of which is more limited); (iv) cause us to recognize income or gain without a corresponding receipt of cash; (v) adversely affect the time as to when a purchase or sale of securities is deemed to occur; (vi) adversely alter the characterization of certain complex financial transactions; and (vii) produce income that will not be qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test described above. We will monitor our transactions and may make certain tax elections in order to mitigate the potential adverse effect of these provisions.

A portfolio company may face financial difficulty that requires us to work-out, modify or otherwise restructure our investment in the portfolio company. Any such restructuring may result in unusable capital losses and future non-cash income. Any restructuring may also result in our recognition of a substantial amount of non-qualifying income for purposes of the 90% Income Test.

Gain or loss that realized by us from the sale or exchange of warrants acquired by us, as well as any loss attributable to the lapse of such warrants, generally will be treated as capital gain or loss. The treatment of such gain or loss as long-term or short-term will depend on how long we held a particular warrant. Upon the exercise of a warrant acquired by us, our tax basis in the stock purchased under the warrant will equal the sum of the amount paid for the warrant plus the strike price paid on the exercise of the warrant.

As a RIC, we are generally limited in our ability to deduct expenses in excess of our “investment company taxable income” (which is, generally, ordinary income plus the excess of net short-term capital gains over net long-term capital losses). If our expenses in a given year exceed investment company taxable income, we would experience a net operating loss for that year. However, a RIC is not permitted to carry forward net operating losses to subsequent years. In addition, expenses can be used only to offset investment company taxable income, not net capital gain. Due to these limits on the deductibility of expenses, we may, for tax purposes, may have aggregate taxable income or net capital gains for several years that we are required to distribute and that is taxable to our stockholders even if such income or net capital gains is greater than the aggregate net income we actually earned during those years. Such required distributions may be made from the Company’s cash assets or by liquidation of investments, if necessary. We may realize gains or losses from such liquidations. In the event we realize net capital gains from such transactions, a stockholder may receive a larger capital gain distribution than it would have received in the absence of such transactions.

U.S. federal income tax law generally permits RICs to carry forward net capital losses indefinitely. However, future Company transactions may limit its ability to use any capital loss carryforwards, and unrealized losses once realized, under Section 382 of the Code.

Our investment in non-U.S. securities may be subject to non-U.S. income, withholding and other taxes. In that case, our yield on those securities would be decreased. Stockholders will generally not be entitled to claim a credit or deduction with respect to non-U.S. taxes paid by us.

If we purchase shares in a “passive foreign investment company” (a “PFIC”), we may be subject to U.S. federal income tax on our allocable share of a portion of any “excess distribution” received on, or any gain from the disposition of, such shares even if our allocable share of such income is distributed to our stockholder as a taxable dividend. Additional charges in the nature of interest generally will be imposed on us in respect of deferred taxes arising from any such excess distribution or gain. If we invest in a PFIC and elect to treat the PFIC as a “qualified electing fund” under the Code (a “QEF”), in lieu of the foregoing requirements, we will be required to include in income each year our proportionate share of the ordinary earnings and net capital gain of the QEF, even if such income is not distributed by the QEF. Alternatively, we may be able to elect to mark-to-market at the end of each taxable year its shares in a PFIC; in this case, we will recognize as ordinary income our allocable share of any increase in the value of such shares, and as ordinary loss our allocable share of any decrease in such value to the extent that any such decrease does not exceed prior increases included in our income. Under either election, we may be required to recognize in a year income in excess of distributions from PFICs and proceeds from dispositions of PFIC stock during that year, and such income will nevertheless be subject to the Annual Distribution Requirement and will be taken into account for purposes of the 4% U.S. federal excise tax.

Failure to Maintain our Qualification as a RIC

If we fail to satisfy the 90% Income Test or the Diversification Tests for any taxable year, we may nevertheless continue to qualify as a RIC for such year if certain relief provisions are applicable (which may, among other things, require us to pay certain corporate-level U.S. federal income taxes or to dispose of certain assets).

If we were unable to qualify for treatment as a RIC and the foregoing relief provisions are not applicable, we would be subject to tax on all of our taxable income at regular corporate rates, regardless of whether we make any distributions to our stockholders. Distributions would not be required, and any distributions would be taxable to our stockholders as ordinary dividend income that, subject to certain limitations, may be eligible for the 20% maximum rate to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits provided certain holding period and other requirements were met. Subject to certain limitations under the Code, corporate distributees would be eligible for the dividends-received deduction. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the stockholder's tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a capital gain. To requalify as a RIC in a subsequent taxable year, we would be required to satisfy the RIC qualification requirements for that year and dispose of any earnings and profits from any year in which we failed to qualify as a RIC. Subject to a limited exception applicable to RICs that qualified as such under Subchapter M of the Code for at least one year prior to disqualification and that requalify as a RIC no later than the second year following the nonqualifying year, we could be subject to tax on any unrealized net built-in gains in the assets held by us during the period in which we failed to qualify as a RIC that are recognized within the subsequent 5 years, unless we made a special election to pay corporate-level U.S. federal income tax on such built-in gain at the time of our requalification as a RIC.

The remainder of this discussion assumes that we will qualify for taxation as a RIC and satisfy the Annual Distribution Requirement for the current taxable year and each future taxable year.

Taxation of U.S. Stockholders

Distributions by us generally are taxable to U.S. stockholders as ordinary income or capital gains. Distributions of our "investment company taxable income" (which is, generally, our net ordinary income plus realized net short-term capital gains in excess of realized net long-term capital losses) will be taxable as ordinary income to U.S. stockholders to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. To the extent such distributions paid by us to non-corporate U.S. stockholders (including individuals) are attributable to dividends from U.S. corporations and certain qualified foreign corporations, such distributions ("Qualifying Dividends") may be eligible for a maximum tax rate of 20%. In this regard, it is anticipated that distributions paid by us generally will not be attributable to dividends and, therefore, generally will not qualify for the 20% maximum rate applicable to Qualifying Dividends. Distributions of our net capital gains (which are generally our realized net long-term capital gains in excess of realized net short-term capital losses) properly reported by us as "capital gain dividends" will be taxable to a U.S. stockholder as long-term capital gains which are currently taxable at a maximum rate of 20% in the case of individuals or estates, regardless of the U.S. stockholder's holding period for his, her or its common stock and regardless of whether paid in cash or reinvested in additional common stock. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits first will reduce a U.S. stockholder's adjusted tax basis in such U.S. stockholder's common stock and, after the adjusted basis is reduced to zero, will constitute capital gains to such U.S. stockholder.

Under the DRIP, our U.S. stockholders who have not "opted out" of our DRIP will have their cash distributions automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distributions. Any distributions reinvested under the plan will nevertheless be treated as received by the U.S. stockholders for U.S. federal income tax purposes. A U.S. stockholder will have an adjusted basis in the additional common stock purchased through the plan equal to the amount of the reinvested distribution. The additional shares will have a new holding period commencing on the day following the day on which the shares are credited to the U.S. stockholder's account.

We may retain some or all of our realized net long-term capital gains in excess of realized net short-term capital losses, but designate the retained net capital gain as a “deemed distribution.” In that case, among other consequences, we will pay tax on the retained amount, each U.S. stockholder will be required to include his, her or its share of the deemed distribution in income as if it had been actually distributed to the U.S. stockholder, and the U.S. stockholder will be entitled to claim a credit equal to his, her or its allocable share of the tax paid thereon by us. If the amount of tax that a U.S. stockholder is treated as having paid exceeds the tax they owe on the deemed capital gain distribution, such excess generally may be claimed as a credit against the U.S. stockholder’s other U.S. federal income tax obligations or may be refunded to the extent it exceeds a U.S. stockholder’s liability for U.S. federal income tax. The amount of the deemed distribution net of such tax will be added to the U.S. stockholder’s tax basis for his, her or its common stock. In order to utilize the deemed distribution approach, we must provide written notice to our U.S. stockholders within 60 days after the close of the relevant taxable year. We cannot treat any of our investment company taxable income as a “deemed distribution.”

We may distribute taxable distributions that are payable in cash or shares of our common stock at the election of each stockholder. Under certain applicable provisions of the Code and the U.S. Treasury regulations and certain IRS guidance, distributions by RICs that are payable in cash or in shares of stock at the election of stockholders are treated as taxable distributions. The IRS has published a revenue procedure indicating that, in the case of publicly offered RICs, this rule will apply where the total amount of cash to be distributed is not less than 20% (which has been temporarily reduced to 10.0% for distributions declared on or after April 1, 2020, and on or before December 31, 2020) of the total distribution. Under this revenue procedure, if too many stockholders elect to receive their distributions in cash, the cash available for distribution must be allocated among the stockholders electing to receive cash (with the balance of the distribution paid in stock). In no event will any stockholder electing to receive cash, receive less than the lesser of (a) the portion of the distribution such stockholder has elected to receive in cash or (b) an amount equal to his, her or its entire distribution times the percentage limitation on cash available for distribution. If the Company decides to make any distributions consistent with this guidance that are payable in part in its stock, taxable U.S. stockholders receiving such distributions will be required to include the full amount of the distribution (whether received in cash, our stock, or a combination thereof) as ordinary income (or as long-term capital gain to the extent such distribution is properly reported as a capital gain distribution) to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, a U.S. stockholder may be required to pay tax with respect to such distributions in excess of any cash received. If a U.S. stockholder sells the stock it receives as a distribution in order to pay this tax, the sales proceeds may be less than the amount included in income with respect to the distribution, depending on the market price of our stock at the time of the sale.

For purposes of determining (1) whether the Annual Distribution Requirement is satisfied for any year and (2) the amount of capital gain dividends paid for that year, we may, under certain circumstances, elect to treat a dividend that is paid during the following taxable year as if it had been paid during the taxable year in question. If we make such an election, U.S. stockholders will nonetheless be treated as receiving the dividend in the taxable year in which the distribution is made. However, any dividend declared by us in October, November or December of any calendar year, payable to stockholders of record on a specified date in such a month and actually paid during January of the following year, will be treated as if it had been received by our U.S. stockholders on December 31 of the year in which the dividend was declared.

If an investor purchases shares of our common stock shortly before the record date of a distribution, the price of the shares will include the value of the distribution and the investor will be subject to tax on the distribution even though economically it may represent a return of his, her or its investment.

A U.S. stockholder generally will recognize taxable gain or loss if the U.S. stockholder sells or otherwise disposes of his, her or its shares of our common stock. The amount of gain or loss will be measured by the difference between such U.S. stockholder’s adjusted tax basis in the common stock sold and the amount of the proceeds received in exchange. Any gain or loss arising from such sale or disposition generally will be treated as long-term capital gain or loss if the U.S. stockholder has held his, her or its shares for more than one year. Otherwise, it will be classified as short-term capital gain or loss. However, any capital loss arising from the sale or disposition of shares of our common stock held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital loss to the extent of the amount of capital gain dividends received, or undistributed capital gain deemed received, with respect to such shares. In addition, all or a portion of any loss recognized by a U.S. stockholder upon a disposition of shares of our common stock will generally be disallowed if the U.S. stockholder purchases other shares of our common stock (whether through reinvestment of distributions or otherwise) within 30 days before or after the disposition.

The maximum U.S. federal income tax rate on long-term capital gains for non-corporate taxpayers is 20%. In addition, individuals with modified adjusted gross incomes in excess of \$200,000 (\$250,000 in the case of married individuals filing jointly) and certain estates and trusts are subject to an additional 3.8% tax on their “net investment income,” which generally includes net income from interest, dividends, annuities, royalties, and rents, and net capital gains (other than certain amounts earned from trades or businesses). Corporate U.S. stockholders currently are subject to U.S. federal income tax on net capital gain at the maximum 21% rate also applied to ordinary income. Non-corporate U.S. stockholders with net capital losses for a year (i.e., capital losses in excess of capital gains) generally may deduct up to \$3,000 of such losses against their ordinary income that year; any net capital losses of a non-corporate U.S. stockholder in excess of \$3,000 generally may be carried forward and used in subsequent years as provided in the Code. Corporate U.S. stockholders generally may not deduct any net capital losses for a year, but may carry back such losses for three years or carry forward such losses for five years.

We or the applicable withholding agent will send to each of our U.S. stockholders, as promptly as possible after the end of each calendar year, a notice detailing the amounts includible in such U.S. stockholder’s taxable income for such year as ordinary income, Qualifying Dividends and as long-term capital gain. In addition, the federal tax status of each year’s distributions generally will be reported to the IRS. Distributions may also be subject to additional state, local and foreign taxes depending on a U.S. stockholder’s particular situation.

Taxation of Non-U.S. Stockholders

Whether an investment in the shares is appropriate for a Non-U.S. stockholder will depend upon that person’s particular circumstances. An investment in the shares by a Non-U.S. stockholder may have adverse tax consequences. Non-U.S. stockholders should consult their tax advisers before investing in our common stock.

In general, Non-U.S. stockholders that are not otherwise engaged in a U.S. trade or business will not be subject to U.S. federal income on distributions paid by us. However, distributions of our “investment company taxable income” generally are subject to withholding of U.S. federal tax at a 30% rate (or lower rate provided by an applicable treaty) to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits unless an applicable exception applies. No withholding is required with respect to certain distributions if (i) the distributions are properly reported to our stockholders as “interest-related dividends” or “short-term capital gain dividends,” (ii) the distributions are derived from sources specified in the Code for such dividends and (iii) certain other requirements are satisfied. Currently, we do not anticipate that a significant amount of our distributions would be reported as eligible for this exemption from withholding. No assurance can be provided that any of our distributions will qualify for this exemption.

If the distributions are effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if a treaty applies, are attributable to a U.S. permanent establishment of the Non-U.S. stockholder), we will not be required to withhold U.S. federal tax if the Non-U.S. stockholder complies with applicable certification and disclosure requirements, although the distributions will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the rates applicable to U.S. persons. Special certification requirements apply to a Non-U.S. stockholder that is a foreign partnership or a foreign trust, and such entities are urged to consult their own tax advisers.

Actual or deemed distributions of our net capital gains to a Non-U.S. stockholder, and gains realized by a Non-U.S. stockholder upon the sale or redemption of our common stock, will not be subject to U.S. federal income tax if properly reported by us as capital gain dividends unless the distributions or gains, as the case may be, are effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if an income tax treaty applies, are attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the Non-U.S. stockholder in the United States) or, in the case of an individual, the Non-U.S. stockholder was present in the United States for 183 days or more during the taxable year and certain other conditions are met.

If we distribute our net capital gains in the form of deemed rather than actual distributions, a Non-U.S. stockholder will be entitled to a U.S. federal income tax credit or tax refund equal to the stockholder’s allocable share of the corporate-level U.S. federal income tax we pay on the capital gains deemed to have been distributed; however, in order to obtain the refund, the Non-U.S. stockholder must obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number and file a U.S. federal income tax return even if the Non-U.S. stockholder would not otherwise be required to obtain a U.S. taxpayer identification number or file a U.S. federal income tax return.

If any actual or deemed distributions of our net capital gains, or any gains realized upon the sale or redemption of our common stock, are effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if an income tax treaty applies, are attributable to a U.S. permanent establishment maintained by the Non-U.S. stockholder), such amounts will be subject to U.S. income tax, on a net income basis, in the same manner, and at the graduated rates applicable to, a U.S. stockholder. For a corporate Non-U.S. stockholder, the after-tax amount of distributions (both actual and deemed) and gains realized upon the sale or redemption of our common stock that are effectively connected to a U.S. trade or business (and, if a treaty applies, are attributable to a U.S. permanent establishment), may, under certain circumstances, be subject to an additional “branch profits tax” at a 30% rate (or at a lower rate if provided for by an applicable treaty). Accordingly, investment in shares of our common stock may not be appropriate for certain Non-U.S. stockholders.

Non-U.S. stockholders will not generally be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax with respect to gain recognized on the sale or other disposition of shares of our common stock.

Under the DRIP, our stockholders who have not “opted out” of our DRIP will have their cash distributions automatically reinvested in additional shares of our common stock, rather than receiving the cash distributions. If the distribution is a distribution of our investment company taxable income and is not properly reported by us as a short-term capital gains dividend or interest-related dividend (assuming an extension of the exemption discussed above), the amount distributed (to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits) will be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax as described above and only the net after-tax amount will be reinvested in our common stock. If the distribution is effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if a treaty applies, is attributable to a U.S. permanent establishment), generally the full amount of the distribution will be reinvested in the plan and will nevertheless be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the ordinary income rates applicable to U.S. persons. The Non-U.S. stockholder will have an adjusted basis in the additional common stock purchased through the plan equal to the amount reinvested. The additional shares will have a new holding period commencing on the day following the day on which the shares are credited to the Non-U.S. stockholder’s account.

The tax consequences to Non-U.S. stockholders entitled to claim the benefits of an applicable tax treaty or that are individuals that are present in the U.S. for 183 days or more during a taxable year may be different from those described herein. Non-U.S. stockholders are urged to consult their tax advisers with respect to the procedure for claiming the benefit of a lower treaty rate and the applicability of foreign taxes.

Non-U.S. persons should consult their own tax advisers with respect to the U.S. federal income tax and withholding tax, and state, local and foreign tax consequences of an investment in the shares.

If we were unable to qualify for treatment as a RIC, any distributions by us would be treated as dividends to the extent of our current and accumulated earnings and profits. We would not be eligible to report any such dividends as interest-related dividends, short-term capital gain dividends, or capital gain dividends. As a result, any such dividend paid to a Non-U.S. stockholder that is not effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business of the Non-U.S. stockholder (and, if an income tax treaty applies, attributable to a permanent establishment maintained by the Non-U.S. stockholder in the United States) would be subject to the 30% (or reduced applicable treaty rate) withholding tax discussed above regardless of the source of the income giving rise to such distribution. Distributions in excess of our current and accumulated earnings and profits would be treated first as a return of capital to the extent of the Non-U.S. stockholder’s tax basis, and any remaining distributions would be treated as a gain from the sale of the Non-U.S. stockholder’s shares subject to taxation as discussed above. For the consequences to the Company for failing to qualify as a RIC, see “Failure to Qualify as a RIC” above.

Backup Withholding and Information Reporting

U.S. stockholders. Information returns are required to be filed with the IRS in connection with dividends on the common stock and proceeds received from a sale or other disposition of the common stock to a U.S. stockholder unless the U.S. stockholder is an exempt recipient. U.S. stockholders may also be subject to backup withholding on these payments in respect of the common stock unless such U.S. stockholder provides its taxpayer identification number and otherwise complies with applicable requirements of the backup withholding rules or provides proof of an applicable exemption.

Non-U.S. stockholders. Information returns are required to be filed with the IRS in connection with payment of dividends on the common stock to Non-U.S. stockholders. Unless a Non-U.S. stockholder complies with certification procedures to establish that it is not a United States person, information returns may also be filed with the IRS in connection with the proceeds from a sale or other disposition of the common stock. A Non-U.S. stockholder who is a nonresident alien individual may be subject to information reporting and backup-withholding of U.S. federal income tax on dividends unless the Non-U.S. stockholder provides us or the dividend paying agent with an IRS Form W-8BEN or IRS Form W-8BEN-E (or an acceptable substitute form) or otherwise meets documentary evidence requirements for establishing that it is a Non-U.S. stockholder or otherwise establishes an exemption from backup withholding.

Amounts withheld under the backup withholding rules are not additional taxes and may be refunded or credited against a U.S. stockholder's or Non-U.S. stockholder's U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, provided the required information is timely furnished to the IRS.

FATCA

Legislation commonly referred to as the "Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act," or "FATCA," generally imposes a 30% withholding tax on payments of certain types of income to foreign financial institutions ("FFIs") unless such FFIs either: (i) enter into an agreement with the U.S. Treasury to report certain required information with respect to accounts held by U.S. persons (or held by foreign entities that have U.S. persons as substantial owners) or (ii) reside in a jurisdiction that has entered into an intergovernmental agreement ("IGA") with the United States to collect and share such information and are in compliance with the terms of such IGA and any enabling legislation or regulations. The types of income subject to the tax include U.S. source interest and dividends. While existing U.S. Treasury regulations would also require withholding or payments of the gross proceeds from the sale of any property occurring after December 31, 2018 that could produce U.S.- source interest or dividends, the U.S. Treasury department has indicated its intent to eliminate this requirement in subsequent proposed regulations, which state that taxpayers may rely on the proposed regulations until final regulations are issued. The information required to be reported includes the identity and taxpayer identification number of each account holder that is a U.S. person and transaction activity within the holder's account. In addition, subject to certain exceptions, FATCA also imposes a 30% withholding on payments to foreign entities that are not FFIs unless such foreign entities certify that they do not have a greater than 10% U.S. owner or provide the withholding agent with identifying information on each greater than 10% U.S. owner. Depending on the status of a Non-U.S. stockholder and the status of the intermediaries through which they hold their shares, Non-U.S. stockholders could be subject to this 30% withholding tax with respect to distributions on their shares and proceeds from the sale of their shares. Under certain circumstances, a Non-U.S. stockholder might be eligible for refunds or credits of such taxes.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR SECURITIES

This prospectus contains a summary of the common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights, warrants and debt securities that may be offered hereunder. These summaries are not meant to be a complete description of each security. However, this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement will contain the material terms and conditions for each security.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR CAPITAL STOCK

This prospectus contains a summary of our capital stock and is not meant to be a complete description. However, this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement will contain the material terms and conditions for each security sold thereunder. The following description is based on relevant portions of the Maryland General Corporation Law (the “MGCL”) and on our charter and bylaws.

Stock

The authorized stock of SuRo Capital as of June 30, 2020 consists of 100,000,000 shares of stock, par value \$0.01 per share, all of which are initially designated as common stock. Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the ticker symbol “SSSS.” As of June 30, 2020, there are no outstanding options or warrants to purchase our stock. Under the Company’s Amended and Restated 2019 Equity Incentive Plan (the “Amended Equity Incentive Plan”), and subject to the terms therein, the Company may issue (i) restricted shares to its employees, officers and all directors, including non-employee directors, and (ii) options to its employees, officers, and directors, excluding non-employee directors.¹ Under the MGCL, our stockholders generally are not personally liable for our debts or obligations.

The following are our outstanding classes of equity securities as of June 30, 2020:

Title of Class	Amount Authorized	Amount Held by Us or for Our Account	Amount Outstanding
Common stock	100,000,000	—	16,279,679

Under our charter our Board of Directors is authorized to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock without obtaining stockholder approval. As permitted by the MGCL, our charter provides that the Board of Directors, without any action by our stockholders, may amend the charter from time to time to increase or decrease the aggregate number of shares of stock or the number of shares of stock of any class or series that we have authority to issue.

Common Stock

All shares of our common stock have equal rights as to earnings, assets, voting, and dividends and, when they are issued, will be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable. Distributions may be paid to the holders of our common stock if, as and when authorized by our Board of Directors and declared by us out of assets legally available therefor. Shares of our common stock have no preemptive, conversion or redemption rights and are freely transferable, except where their transfer is restricted by federal and state securities laws or by contract. In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, each share of our common stock would be entitled to share ratably in all of our assets that are legally available for distribution after we pay all debts and other liabilities and subject to any preferential rights of holders of our preferred stock, if any preferred stock is outstanding at such time. Each share of our common stock is entitled to one vote on all matters submitted to a vote of stockholders, including the election of directors. Except as provided with respect to any other class or series of stock, the holders of our common stock will possess exclusive voting power. There is no cumulative voting in the election of directors, which means that holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock can elect all of our directors, and holders of less than a majority of such shares will be unable to elect any director.

¹ Under the Amended Equity Incentive Plan, the maximum aggregate number of our common stock that may be authorized for issuance is 1,627,967.

Preferred Stock

Our charter authorizes our Board of Directors to classify and reclassify any unissued shares of stock into other classes or series of stock, including preferred stock. The cost of any such reclassification would be borne by our existing common stockholders. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, the Board of Directors is required by the MGCL and by our charter to set the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of redemption for each class or series. Thus, the Board of Directors could authorize the issuance of shares of preferred stock with terms and conditions which could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a transaction or a change in control that might involve a premium price for holders of our common stock or otherwise be in their best interest. You should note, however, that any issuance of preferred stock must comply with the requirements of the 1940 Act. The 1940 Act requires, among other things, that (1) immediately after issuance and before any dividend or other distribution is made with respect to our common stock and before any purchase of common stock is made, such preferred stock together with all other senior securities must not exceed an amount equal to 50% of our gross assets after (or 66 2/3% if certain requirements are met) deducting the amount of such dividend, distribution or purchase price, as the case may be, and (2) the holders of shares of preferred stock, if any are issued, must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if dividends on such preferred stock are in arrears by two full years or more. Certain matters under the 1940 Act require the separate vote of the holders of any issued and outstanding preferred stock. For example, holders of preferred stock would vote separately from the holders of common stock on a proposal to cease operations as a BDC. We expect that the availability for issuance of preferred stock will provide us with increased flexibility in structuring future financings and acquisitions. However, we do not currently have any plans to issue preferred stock.

Limitation on Liability of Directors and Officers; Indemnification and Advance of Expenses

The MGCL permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision limiting the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. Our charter contains such a provision which eliminates directors' and officers' liability to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL, subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter authorizes us, to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as our director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee, from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse their reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. Our bylaws obligate us, to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as our director or officer and at our request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee and who is made, or threatened to be made, a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse his or her reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. The charter and bylaws also permit us to indemnify and advance expenses to any person who served a predecessor of us in any of the capacities described above and any of our employees or agents or any employees or agents of our predecessor. In accordance with the 1940 Act, we will not indemnify any person for any liability to which such person would be subject by reason of such person's willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his or her office.

The MGCL requires a corporation (unless its charter provides otherwise, which our charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. The MGCL permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that (a) the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty, (b) the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services or (c) in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful. However, under the MGCL, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify for an adverse judgment in a suit by or in the right of the corporation or for a judgment of liability on the basis that a personal benefit was improperly received unless, in either case a court orders indemnification, and then only for expenses. In addition, the MGCL permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer in advance of final disposition of a proceeding upon the corporation's receipt of (a) a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation and (b) a written undertaking by him or her or on his or her behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the standard of conduct was not met.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our directors and executive officers. The indemnification agreements provide our directors and executive officers the maximum indemnification permitted under the MGCL and the 1940 Act.

Certain Provisions of the MGCL and Our Charter and Bylaws

The MGCL and our charter and bylaws contain provisions that could make it more difficult for a potential acquirer to acquire us by means of a tender offer, proxy contest or otherwise, the material ones of which are discussed below. These provisions are expected to discourage certain coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to negotiate first with our Board of Directors. We expect the benefits of these provisions to outweigh the potential disadvantages of discouraging any such acquisition proposals because, among other things, the negotiation of such proposals may improve their terms.

Classified Board of Directors

Our Board of Directors is divided into three classes of directors serving staggered three-year terms. The current terms of the first, second and third classes will expire in 2021, 2022, and 2023 respectively, and in each case, those directors will serve until their successors are elected and qualify. Upon expiration of their terms, directors of each class will be elected to serve for three-year terms and until their successors are duly elected and qualify and each year one class of directors will be elected by the stockholders. A classified Board may render a change in control of us or removal of our incumbent management more difficult. We believe, however, that the longer time required to elect a majority of a classified Board of Directors will help to ensure the continuity and stability of our management and policies.

Election of Directors

Our bylaws, as authorized by our charter, provide that a plurality of all the votes cast at a meeting of stockholders duly called and at which a quorum is present is required to elect a director. Pursuant to our charter our Board of Directors may amend the bylaws to alter the vote required to elect directors.

Number of Directors; Vacancies; Removal

Our charter provides that the number of directors will be set only by the Board of Directors in accordance with our bylaws. Our bylaws provide that a majority of our entire Board of Directors may at any time increase or decrease the number of directors. However, unless our bylaws are amended, the number of directors may never be less than one nor more than nine. Our charter provides that, at such time as we have at least three independent directors and our common stock is registered under the Exchange Act, as amended, we elect to be subject to the provision of Subtitle 8 of Title 3 of the MGCL regarding the filling of vacancies on the Board of Directors. Accordingly, at such time, except as may be provided by the Board of Directors in setting the terms of any class or series of preferred stock, any and all vacancies on the Board of Directors may be filled only by the affirmative vote of a majority of the remaining directors in office, even if the remaining directors do not constitute a quorum, and any director elected to fill a vacancy will serve for the remainder of the full term of the directorship in which the vacancy occurred and until a successor is elected and qualifies, subject to any applicable requirements of the 1940 Act.

Our charter provides that a director may be removed only for cause, as defined in our charter, and then only by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast in the election of directors.

Action by Stockholders

Under the MGCL, stockholder action can be taken only at an annual or special meeting of stockholders or (unless the charter provides for stockholder action by less than unanimous written consent, which our charter does not) by unanimous written consent in lieu of a meeting. These provisions, combined with the requirements of our bylaws regarding the calling of a stockholder-requested special meeting of stockholders discussed below, may have the effect of delaying consideration of a stockholder proposal until the next annual meeting.

Advance Notice Provisions for Stockholder Nominations and Stockholder Proposals

Our bylaws provide that with respect to an annual meeting of stockholders, nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors and the proposal of business to be considered by stockholders may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by the Board of Directors or (3) by a stockholder who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice procedures of our bylaws. With respect to special meetings of stockholders, only the business specified in our notice of the meeting may be brought before the meeting. Nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors at a special meeting may be made only (1) pursuant to our notice of the meeting, (2) by the Board of Directors or (3) provided that the Board of Directors has determined that directors will be elected at the meeting, by a stockholder who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has complied with the advance notice provisions of the bylaws.

The purpose of requiring stockholders to give us advance notice of nominations and other business is to afford our Board of Directors a meaningful opportunity to consider the qualifications of the proposed nominees and the advisability of any other proposed business and, to the extent deemed necessary or desirable by our Board of Directors, to inform stockholders and make recommendations about such qualifications or business, as well as to provide a more orderly procedure for conducting meetings of stockholders. Although our bylaws do not give our Board of Directors any power to disapprove stockholder nominations for the election of directors or proposals recommending certain action, they may have the effect of precluding a contest for the election of directors or the consideration of stockholder proposals if proper procedures are not followed and of discouraging or deterring a third party from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect its own slate of directors or to approve its own proposal without regard to whether consideration of such nominees or proposals might be harmful or beneficial to us and our stockholders.

Calling of Special Meetings of Stockholders

Our bylaws provide that special meetings of stockholders may be called by our Board of Directors and certain of our officers. Additionally, our bylaws provide that, subject to the satisfaction of certain procedural and informational requirements by the stockholders requesting the meeting, a special meeting of stockholders will be called by the secretary of the corporation upon the written request of stockholders entitled to cast not less than a majority of all the votes entitled to be cast at such meeting.

Approval of Extraordinary Corporate Action; Amendment of Charter and Bylaws

Under the MGCL, a Maryland corporation generally cannot dissolve, amend its charter, merge, sell all or substantially all of its assets, engage in a share exchange or engage in similar transactions outside the ordinary course of business, unless approved by the affirmative vote of stockholders entitled to cast at least two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. However, a Maryland corporation may provide in its charter for approval of these matters by a lesser percentage, but not less than a majority of all of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Our charter generally provides for approval of charter amendments and extraordinary transactions by the stockholders entitled to cast at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Our charter also provides that the following matters require the approval of stockholders entitled to cast at least 80% of the votes entitled to be cast: (i) certain charter amendments; (ii) any proposal for our conversion, whether by merger or otherwise, from a closed-end company to an open-end company; (iii) any proposal for our liquidation or dissolution; or (iv) any proposal regarding a merger, consolidation, share exchange or sale or exchange of all or substantially all of our assets that the MGCL requires to be approved by our stockholders. However, if such amendment or proposal is approved by a majority of our continuing directors (in addition to approval by our Board of Directors), such amendment or proposal may be approved by a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on such a matter. The “continuing directors” are defined in our charter as (1) our current directors, (2) those directors whose nomination for election by the stockholders or whose election by the directors to fill vacancies is approved by a majority of our current directors then on our Board of Directors or (3) any successor directors whose nomination for election by the stockholders or whose election by the directors to fill vacancies is approved by a majority of continuing directors or the successor continuing directors then in office.

Our charter and bylaws provide that the Board of Directors will have the exclusive power to make, alter, amend or repeal any provision of our bylaws.

No Appraisal Rights

Except with respect to appraisal rights arising in connection with the Control Share Act discussed below, as permitted by the MGCL, our charter provides that stockholders will not be entitled to exercise appraisal rights unless a majority of the Board of Directors shall determine such rights apply.

Control Share Acquisitions

The MGCL, pursuant to the Control Share Act, provides that control shares of a Maryland corporation acquired in a control share acquisition have no voting rights except to the extent approved by a vote of two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter. Shares owned by the acquiror, by officers or by directors who are employees of the corporation are excluded from shares entitled to vote on the matter. Control shares are voting shares of stock which, if aggregated with all other shares of stock owned by the acquiror or in respect of which the acquiror is able to exercise or direct the exercise of voting power (except solely by virtue of a revocable proxy), would entitle the acquiror to exercise voting power in electing directors within one of the increasing ranges of voting power listed in the Control Share Act. The requisite stockholder approval must be obtained each time an acquiror crosses one of the thresholds of voting power. Control shares do not include shares the acquiring person is then entitled to vote as a result of having previously obtained stockholder approval. A control share acquisition means the acquisition of control shares, subject to certain exceptions.

Our bylaws contain a provision exempting from the Control Share Act any and all acquisitions by any person of our shares of stock. There can be no assurance that such provision will not be amended or eliminated at any time in the future. However, we will amend our bylaws to be subject to the Control Share Act only if our Board of Directors determines that it would be in our best interests and if the SEC staff does not object to our determination that our being subject to the Control Share Act does not conflict with the 1940 Act. The SEC staff has issued informal guidance setting forth its position that certain provisions of the Control Share Act would, if implemented, violate Section 18(i) of the 1940 Act.

Business Combinations

Under the MGCL, “business combinations” between a Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder or an affiliate of an interested stockholder are prohibited for five years after the most recent date on which the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. These business combinations include a merger, consolidation, share exchange or, in circumstances specified in the statute, an asset transfer or issuance or reclassification of equity securities. An interested stockholder is defined as:

- any person who beneficially owns 10% or more of the voting power of the corporation’s outstanding voting stock; or
- an affiliate or associate of the corporation who, at any time within the two-year period prior to the date in question, was the beneficial owner of 10% or more of the voting power of the then outstanding voting stock of the corporation.

A person is not an interested stockholder under this statute if the Board of Directors approved in advance the transaction by which the stockholder otherwise would have become an interested stockholder. However, in approving a transaction, the Board of Directors may provide that its approval is subject to compliance, at or after the time of approval, with any terms and conditions determined by the Board of Directors.

After the five-year prohibition, any business combination between the Maryland corporation and an interested stockholder generally must be recommended by the Board of Directors of the corporation and approved by the affirmative vote of at least:

- 80% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of outstanding shares of voting stock of the corporation; and
- two-thirds of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of voting stock of the corporation other than shares held by the interested stockholder with whom or with whose affiliate the business combination is to be effected or held by an affiliate or associate of the interested stockholder.

These super-majority vote requirements do not apply if the corporation's common stockholders receive a minimum price, as defined under the MGCL, for their shares in the form of cash or other consideration in the same form as previously paid by the interested stockholder for its shares.

The statute permits various exemptions from its provisions, including business combinations that are exempted by the Board of Directors before the time that the interested stockholder becomes an interested stockholder. Our Board of Directors has adopted a resolution that any business combination between us and any other person is exempted from the provisions of the Model Business Corporation Act (the "MBCA"), provided that the business combination is first approved by the Board of Directors, including a majority of the directors who are not "interested persons" as defined in the 1940 Act. This resolution may be altered or repealed in whole or in part at any time; however, our Board of Directors will adopt resolutions so as to make us subject to the provisions of the MBCA only if the Board of Directors determines that it would be in our best interests and if the SEC staff does not object to our determination that our being subject to the MBCA does not conflict with the 1940 Act. If this resolution is repealed, or the Board of Directors does not otherwise approve a business combination, the statute may discourage others from trying to acquire control of us and increase the difficulty of consummating any offer.

Conflict with 1940 Act

Our bylaws provide that, if and to the extent that any provision of the MGCL, including the Control Share Act (if we amend our bylaws to be subject to such Act) and the MBCA, or any provision of our charter or bylaws conflicts with any provision of the 1940 Act, the applicable provision of the 1940 Act will control.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR PREFERRED STOCK

In addition to shares of common stock, our charter authorizes the issuance of preferred stock. If we offer preferred stock under this prospectus, we will issue an appropriate prospectus supplement. We may issue preferred stock from time to time in one or more classes or series, without stockholder approval. Prior to issuance of shares of each class or series, our Board of Directors is required by the MGCL and by our charter to set the terms, preferences, conversion or other rights, voting powers, restrictions, limitations as to dividends or other distributions, qualifications and terms or conditions of redemption for each class or series. Any such an issuance must adhere to the requirements of the 1940 Act, the MGCL and any other limitations imposed by law.

The 1940 Act currently requires, among other things, that (a) immediately after issuance and before any distribution is made with respect to common stock, the liquidation preference of the preferred stock, together with all other senior securities, must not exceed an amount equal to 50% (or 66 2/3% if certain requirements are met) of our total assets (taking into account such distribution), (b) the holders of shares of preferred stock, if any are issued, must be entitled as a class to elect two directors at all times and to elect a majority of the directors if dividends on the preferred stock are in arrears by two years or more and (c) such class of stock have complete priority over any other class of stock as to distribution of assets and payment of dividends, which dividends shall be cumulative.

For any series of preferred stock that we may issue, our Board of Directors will determine and the articles supplementary and the prospectus supplement relating to such series will describe:

- the designation and number of shares of such series;
- the rate and time at which, and the preferences and conditions under which, any dividends will be paid on shares of such series, as well as whether such dividends are participating or non-participating;
- any provisions relating to convertibility or exchangeability of the shares of such series, including adjustments to the conversion price of such series;
- the rights and preferences, if any, of holders of shares of such series upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs;
- the voting powers, if any, of the holders of shares of such series;
- any provisions relating to the redemption of the shares of such series;
- any limitations on our ability to pay dividends or make distributions on, or acquire or redeem, other securities while shares of such series are outstanding;
- any conditions or restrictions on our ability to issue additional shares of such series or other securities;
- if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and
- any other relative powers, preferences and participating, optional or special rights of shares of such series, and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereof.

All shares of preferred stock that we may issue will be identical and of equal rank except as to the particular terms thereof that may be fixed by our Board of Directors, and all shares of each series of preferred stock will be identical and of equal rank except as to the dates from which dividends, if any, thereon will be cumulative.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR SUBSCRIPTION RIGHTS

General

We may issue subscription rights to our stockholders to purchase common stock. Subscription rights may be issued independently or together with any other offered security and may or may not be transferable by the person purchasing or receiving the subscription rights. In connection with a subscription rights offering to our stockholders, we would distribute certificates evidencing the subscription rights and a prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving subscription rights in such subscription rights offering. We will not offer transferable subscription rights to our stockholders at a price equivalent to less than the then current net asset value per share of common stock, excluding underwriting commissions, unless we first file a post-effective amendment that is declared effective by the SEC with respect to such issuance and the common stock to be purchased in connection with the rights represents no more than one-third of our outstanding common stock at the time such rights are issued (*i.e.*, the right to purchase one new share for a minimum of every three rights held). In connection with a subscription rights offering to our stockholders, we would distribute certificates evidencing the subscription rights and a prospectus supplement to our stockholders on the record date that we set for receiving subscription rights in such subscription rights offering. Our common stockholders will indirectly bear the expenses of such subscription rights offerings, regardless of whether our common stockholders exercise any subscription rights.

The applicable prospectus supplement would describe the following terms of subscription rights in respect of which this prospectus is being delivered:

- the period of time the offering would remain open (which shall be open a minimum number of days such that all record holders would be eligible to participate in the offering and shall not be open longer than 120 days);
- the title of such subscription rights;
- the exercise price for such subscription rights (or method of calculation thereof);
- the ratio of the offering (which, in the case of transferable rights, will require a minimum of three shares to be held of record before a person is entitled to purchase an additional share);
- the number of such subscription rights issued to each stockholder;
- the extent to which such subscription rights are transferable and the market on which they may be traded if they are transferable;
- if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to the issuance or exercise of such subscription rights;
- the date on which the right to exercise such subscription rights shall commence, and the date on which such right shall expire (subject to any extension);
- the extent to which such subscription rights include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities and the terms of such over-subscription privilege;
- any termination right we may have in connection with such subscription rights offering; and
- any other terms of such subscription rights, including exercise, settlement and other procedures and limitations relating to the transfer and exercise of such subscription rights.

Exercise of Subscription Rights

Each subscription right would entitle the holder of the subscription right to purchase for cash such amount of shares of common stock at such exercise price as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the subscription rights offered thereby. Subscription rights may be exercised at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date for such subscription rights set forth in the prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised subscription rights would become void.

Subscription rights may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the subscription rights offered thereby. Upon receipt of payment and the subscription rights certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the subscription rights agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement we will forward, as soon as practicable, the shares of common stock purchasable upon such exercise. To the extent permissible under applicable law, we may determine to offer any unsubscribed offered securities directly to persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Dilutive Effects

Any stockholder who chooses not to participate in a rights offering should expect to own a smaller interest in us upon completion of such rights offering. Any rights offering will dilute the ownership interest and voting power of stockholders who do not fully exercise their subscription rights. Further, because the net proceeds per share from any rights offering may be lower than our then current net asset value per share, the rights offering may reduce our net asset value per share. The amount of dilution that a stockholder will experience could be substantial, particularly to the extent we engage in multiple rights offerings within a limited time period. In addition, the market price of our common stock could be adversely affected while a rights offering is ongoing as a result of the possibility that a significant number of additional shares may be issued upon completion of such rights offering. All of our stockholders will also indirectly bear the expenses associated with any rights offering we may conduct, regardless of whether they elect to exercise any rights.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR DEBT SECURITIES

We may issue debt securities in one or more series. The specific terms of each series of debt securities will be described in the particular prospectus supplement relating to that series. The prospectus supplement may or may not modify the general terms found in this prospectus and will be filed with the SEC. For a complete description of the terms of a particular series of debt securities, you should read both this prospectus and the prospectus supplement relating to that particular series.

As required by federal law for all bonds and notes of companies that are publicly offered, the debt securities are governed by a document called an “indenture.” An indenture is a contract between us and the financial institution acting as trustee on your behalf, and is subject to and governed by the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended. The trustee has two main roles. First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if we default. There are some limitations on the extent to which the trustee acts on your behalf, described in the second paragraph under “— Events of Default — Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs.” Second, the trustee performs certain administrative duties for us with respect to our debt securities.

This section includes a description of the material provisions of the indenture. Because this section is a summary, however, it does not describe every aspect of the debt securities and the indenture. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not this description, defines your rights as a holder of debt securities. A copy of the form of indenture is attached as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. We will file a supplemental indenture with the SEC in connection with any debt offering, at which time the supplemental indenture would be publicly available. See “Available Information” in this prospectus for information on how to obtain a copy of the indenture.

The prospectus supplement, which will accompany this prospectus, will describe the particular series of debt securities being offered by including:

- the designation or title of the series of debt securities;
- the total principal amount of the series of debt securities;
- the percentage of the principal amount at which the series of debt securities will be offered;
- the date or dates on which principal will be payable;
- the rate or rates (which may be either fixed or variable) and/or the method of determining such rate or rates of interest, if any;
- the date or dates from which any interest will accrue, or the method of determining such date or dates, and the date or dates on which any interest will be payable;
- whether any interest may be paid by issuing additional securities of the same series in lieu of cash (and the terms upon which any such interest may be paid by issuing additional securities);
- the terms for redemption, extension or early repayment, if any;
- the currencies in which the series of debt securities are issued and payable;
- whether the amount of payments of principal, premium or interest, if any, on a series of debt securities will be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which could be based on one or more currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices) and how these amounts will be determined;
- the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan in the City of New York, of payment, transfer, conversion and/or exchange of the debt securities;
- the denominations in which the offered debt securities will be issued (if other than \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof);
- the provision for any sinking fund;
- any restrictive covenants;

- any Events of Default (as defined in “Events of Default” below);
- whether the series of debt securities are issuable in certificated form;
- any provisions for defeasance or covenant defeasance;
- any special U.S. federal income tax implications, including, if applicable, U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to original issue discount;
- whether and under what circumstances we will pay additional amounts in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether we will have the option to redeem the debt securities rather than pay the additional amounts (and the terms of this option);
- any provisions for convertibility or exchangeability of the debt securities into or for any other securities;
- whether the debt securities are subject to subordination and the terms of such subordination;
- whether the debt securities are secured and the terms of any security interest;
- the listing, if any, on a securities exchange; and
- any other terms.

The debt securities may be secured or unsecured obligations. Unless the prospectus supplement states otherwise, principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, will be paid by us in immediately available funds.

We are permitted, under specified conditions, to issue multiple classes of indebtedness if our asset coverage, as defined in the 1940 Act, is at least equal to 200% (or 150% if certain requirements are met) immediately after each such issuance after giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to us by the SEC. In addition, while any indebtedness and senior securities remain outstanding, we must make provisions to prohibit the distribution to our stockholders or the repurchase of such securities or shares unless we meet the applicable asset coverage ratios at the time of the distribution or repurchase. For a discussion of the risks associated with leverage, see “Risk Factors — Risks Related to Our Business and Structure — Regulations governing our operation as a business development company affect our ability to, and the way in which we, raise additional capital, which may expose us to risks, including the typical risks associated with leverage” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K.

General

The indenture provides that any debt securities proposed to be sold under this prospectus and the accompanying prospectus supplement (“offered debt securities”) and any debt securities issuable upon the exercise of warrants or upon conversion or exchange of other offered securities (“underlying debt securities”) may be issued under the indenture in one or more series.

For purposes of this prospectus, any reference to the payment of principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on, debt securities will include additional amounts if required by the terms of the debt securities.

The indenture does not limit the amount of debt securities that may be issued thereunder from time to time. Debt securities issued under the indenture, when a single trustee is acting for all debt securities issued under the indenture, are called the “indenture securities.” The indenture also provides that there may be more than one trustee thereunder, each with respect to one or more different series of indenture securities. See “— Resignation of Trustee” below. At a time when two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, each with respect to only certain series, the term “indenture securities” means the one or more series of debt securities with respect to which each respective trustee is acting. In the event that there is more than one trustee under the indenture, the powers and trust obligations of each trustee described in this prospectus will extend only to the one or more series of indenture securities for which it is trustee. If two or more trustees are acting under the indenture, then the indenture securities for which each trustee is acting would be treated as if issued under separate indentures.

The indenture does not contain any provisions that give you protection in the event we issue a large amount of debt or we are acquired by another entity.

We refer you to the prospectus supplement for information with respect to any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or our covenants that are described below, including any addition of a covenant or other provision providing event risk protection or similar protection.

We have the ability to issue indenture securities with terms different from those of indenture securities previously issued and, without the consent of the holders thereof, to reopen a previous issue of a series of indenture securities and issue additional indenture securities of that series unless the reopening was restricted when that series was created.

Conversion and Exchange

If any debt securities are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities, the prospectus supplement will explain the terms and conditions of the conversion or exchange, including the conversion price or exchange ratio (or the calculation method), the conversion or exchange period (or how the period will be determined), if conversion or exchange will be mandatory or at the option of the holder or us, provisions for adjusting the conversion price or the exchange ratio and provisions affecting conversion or exchange in the event of the redemption of the underlying debt securities. These terms may also include provisions under which the number or amount of other securities to be received by the holders of the debt securities upon conversion or exchange would be calculated according to the market price of the other securities as of a time stated in the prospectus supplement.

Issuance of Securities in Registered Form

We may issue the debt securities in registered form, in which case we may issue them either in book-entry form only or in “certificated” form. Debt securities issued in book-entry form will be represented by global securities. We expect that we will usually issue debt securities in book-entry only form represented by global securities.

Book-Entry Holders

We will issue registered debt securities in book-entry form only, unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. This means debt securities will be represented by one or more global securities registered in the name of a depository that will hold them on behalf of financial institutions that participate in the depository’s book-entry system. These participating institutions, in turn, hold beneficial interests in the debt securities held by the depository or its nominee. These institutions may hold these interests on behalf of themselves or customers.

Under the indenture, only the person in whose name a debt security is registered is recognized as the holder of that debt security. Consequently, for debt securities issued in book-entry form, we will recognize only the depository as the holder of the debt securities and we will make all payments on the debt securities to the depository. The depository will then pass along the payments it receives to its participants, which in turn will pass the payments along to their customers who are the beneficial owners. The depository and its participants do so under agreements they have made with one another or with their customers; they are not obligated to do so under the terms of the debt securities.

As a result, investors will not own debt securities directly. Instead, they will own beneficial interests in a global security, through a bank, broker or other financial institution that participates in the depository’s book-entry system or holds an interest through a participant. As long as the debt securities are represented by one or more global securities, investors will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

Street Name Holders

In the future, we may issue debt securities in certificated form or terminate a global security. In these cases, investors may choose to hold their debt securities in their own names or in “street name.” Debt securities held in street name are registered in the name of a bank, broker or other financial institution chosen by the investor, and the investor would hold a beneficial interest in those debt securities through the account he or she maintains at that institution.

For debt securities held in street name, we will recognize only the intermediary banks, brokers and other financial institutions in whose names the debt securities are registered as the holders of those debt securities, and we will make all payments on those debt securities to them. These institutions will pass along the payments they receive to their customers who are the beneficial owners, but only because they agree to do so in their customer agreements or because they are legally required to do so. Investors who hold debt securities in street name will be indirect holders, and not holders, of the debt securities.

Legal Holders

Our obligations, as well as the obligations of the applicable trustee and those of any third parties employed by us or the applicable trustee, run only to the legal holders of the debt securities. We do not have obligations to investors who hold beneficial interests in global securities, in street name or by any other indirect means. This will be the case whether an investor chooses to be an indirect holder of a debt security or has no choice because we are issuing the debt securities only in book-entry form.

For example, once we make a payment or give a notice to the holder, we have no further responsibility for the payment or notice even if that holder is required, under agreements with depository participants or customers or by law, to pass it along to the indirect holders but does not do so. Similarly, if we want to obtain the approval of the holders for any purpose (for example, to amend an indenture or to relieve us of the consequences of a default or of our obligation to comply with a particular provision of an indenture), we would seek the approval only from the holders, and not the indirect holders, of the debt securities. Whether and how the holders contact the indirect holders is up to the holders.

When we refer to you in this Description of Debt Securities, we mean those who invest in the debt securities being offered by this prospectus, whether they are the holders or only indirect holders of those debt securities. When we refer to your debt securities, we mean the debt securities in which you hold a direct or indirect interest.

Special Considerations for Indirect Holders

If you hold debt securities through a bank, broker or other financial institution, either in book-entry form or in street name, we urge you to check with that institution to find out:

- how it handles securities payments and notices;
- whether it imposes fees or charges;
- how it would handle a request for the holders' consent, if ever required;
- whether and how you can instruct it to send you debt securities registered in your own name so you can be a holder, if that is permitted in the future for a particular series of debt securities;
- how it would exercise rights under the debt securities if there were a default or other event triggering the need for holders to act to protect their interests; and
- if the debt securities are in book-entry form, how the depository's rules and procedures will affect these matters.

Global Securities

As noted above, we usually will issue debt securities as registered securities in book-entry form only. A global security represents one or any other number of individual debt securities. Generally, all debt securities represented by the same global securities will have the same terms.

Each debt security issued in book-entry form will be represented by a global security that we deposit with and register in the name of a financial institution or its nominee that we select. The financial institution that we select for this purpose is called the depository. Unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, known as DTC, will be the depository for all debt securities issued in book-entry form.

A global security may not be transferred to or registered in the name of anyone other than the depository or its nominee, unless special termination situations arise. We describe those situations below under "— Termination of a Global Security." As a result of these arrangements, the depository, or its nominee, will be the sole registered owner and holder of all debt securities represented by a global security, and investors will be permitted to own only beneficial interests in a global security. Beneficial interests must be held by means of an account with a broker, bank or other financial institution that in turn has an account with the depository or with another institution that has an account with the depository. Thus, an investor whose security is represented by a global security will not be a holder of the debt security, but only an indirect holder of a beneficial interest in the global security.

Special Considerations for Global Securities

As an indirect holder, an investor's rights relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depository, as well as general laws relating to securities transfers. The depository that holds the global security will be considered the holder of the debt securities represented by the global security.

If debt securities are issued only in the form of a global security, an investor should be aware of the following:

- an investor cannot cause the debt securities to be registered in his or her name and cannot obtain certificates for his or her interest in the debt securities, except in the special situations we describe below;
- an investor will be an indirect holder and must look to his or her own bank or broker for payments on the debt securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the debt securities, as we describe under “— Issuance of Securities in Registered Form” above;
- an investor may not be able to sell interests in the debt securities to some insurance companies and other institutions that are required by law to own their securities in non-book-entry form;
- an investor may not be able to pledge his or her interest in a global security in circumstances where certificates representing the debt securities must be delivered to the lender or other beneficiary of the pledge in order for the pledge to be effective;
- the depository's policies, which may change from time to time, will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to an investor's interest in a global security. We and the trustee have no responsibility for any aspect of the depository's actions or for its records of ownership interests in a global security. We and the trustee also do not supervise the depository in any way;
- if we redeem less than all the debt securities of a particular series being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount to be redeemed from each of its participants holding that series;
- an investor is required to give notice of exercise of any option to elect repayment of its debt securities, through its participant, to the applicable trustee and to deliver the related debt securities by causing its participant to transfer its interest in those debt securities, on DTC's records, to the applicable trustee;
- DTC requires that those who purchase and sell interests in a global security deposited in its book-entry system use immediately available funds, your broker or bank may also require you to use immediately available funds when purchasing or selling interests in a global security; and
- financial institutions that participate in the depository's book-entry system, and through which an investor holds its interest in a global security, may also have their own policies affecting payments, notices and other matters relating to the debt securities; there may be more than one financial intermediary in the chain of ownership for an investor, we do not monitor and are not responsible for the actions of any of those intermediaries.

Termination of a Global Security

If a global security is terminated for any reason, interests in it will be exchanged for certificates in non-book-entry form (certificated securities). After that exchange, the choice of whether to hold the certificated debt securities directly or in street name will be up to the investor. Investors must consult their own banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in a global security transferred on termination to their own names, so that they will be holders. We have described the rights of legal holders and street name investors under “— Issuance of Securities in Registered Form” above.

The prospectus supplement may list situations for terminating a global security that would apply only to the particular series of debt securities covered by the prospectus supplement. If a global security is terminated, only the depositary, and not we or the applicable trustee, is responsible for deciding the investors in whose names the debt securities represented by the global security will be registered and, therefore, who will be the holders of those debt securities.

Payment and Paying Agents

We will pay interest to the person listed in the applicable trustee's records as the owner of the debt security at the close of business on a particular day in advance of each due date for interest, even if that person no longer owns the debt security on the interest due date. That day, usually about two weeks in advance of the interest due date, is called the "record date." Because we will pay all the interest for an interest period to the holders on the record date, holders buying and selling debt securities must work out between themselves the appropriate purchase price. The most common manner is to adjust the sales price of the debt securities to prorate interest fairly between buyer and seller based on their respective ownership periods within the particular interest period. This prorated interest amount is called "accrued interest."

Payments on Global Securities

We will make payments on a global security in accordance with the applicable policies of the depositary as in effect from time to time. Under those policies, we will make payments directly to the depositary, or its nominee, and not to any indirect holders who own beneficial interests in the global security. An indirect holder's right to those payments will be governed by the rules and practices of the depositary and its participants, as described under "— Special Considerations for Global Securities."

Payments on Certificated Securities

We will make payments on a certificated debt security as follows. We will pay interest that is due on an interest payment date to the holder of debt securities as shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date at our office and/or at other offices that may be specified in the prospectus supplement. We will make all payments of principal and premium, if any, by check at the office of the applicable trustee and/or at other offices that may be specified in the prospectus supplement or in a notice to holders against surrender of the debt security.

Alternatively, at our option, we may pay any cash interest that becomes due on the debt security by mailing a check to the holder at his, her or its address shown on the trustee's records as of the close of business on the regular record date or by transfer to an account at a bank in the United States, in either case, on the due date.

Payment When Offices Are Closed

If any payment is due on a debt security on a day that is not a business day, we will make the payment on the next day that is a business day. Payments made on the next business day in this situation will be treated under the indenture as if they were made on the original due date, except as otherwise indicated in the attached prospectus supplement. Such payment will not result in a default under any debt security or the indenture, and no interest will accrue on the payment amount from the original due date to the next day that is a business day.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive payments on their debt securities.

Events of Default

You will have rights if an Event of Default occurs in respect of the debt securities of your series and is not cured, as described later in this subsection.

The term “Event of Default” in respect of the debt securities of your series means any of the following:

- we do not pay the principal of, or any premium on, a debt security of the series within five days of its due date;
- we do not pay interest on a debt security of the series within 30 days of its due date;
- we do not deposit any sinking fund payment in respect of debt securities of the series within five days of its due date;
- we remain in breach of a covenant in respect of debt securities of the series for 60 days after we receive a written notice of default stating we are in breach (the notice must be sent by either the trustee or holders of at least 25% of the principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series);
- we file for bankruptcy or certain other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization occur and remain undischarged or unstayed for a period of 90 days;
- the series of debt securities has an asset coverage, as such term is defined in the 1940 Act, of less than 100 per centum on the last business day of each of twenty-four consecutive calendar months, giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to the Company by the SEC; or
- any other Event of Default in respect of debt securities of the series described in the prospectus supplement occurs.

An Event of Default for a particular series of debt securities does not necessarily constitute an Event of Default for any other series of debt securities issued under the same or any other indenture. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of debt securities of any default, except in the payment of principal, premium, interest, or sinking or purchase fund installment, if it in good faith considers the withholding of notice to be in the interest of the holders.

Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs

If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series may (and the trustee shall at the request of such holders) declare the entire principal amount of all the debt securities of that series to be due and immediately payable. This is called a declaration of acceleration of maturity. A declaration of acceleration of maturity may be canceled by the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series if (1) we have deposited with the trustee all amounts due and owing with respect to the securities (other than principal that has become due solely by reason of such acceleration) and certain other amounts, and (2) any other Events of Default have been cured or waived.

Except in cases of default, where the trustee has some special duties, the trustee is not required to take any action under the indenture at the request of any holders unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable protection from expenses and liability (called an “indemnity”). If reasonable indemnity is provided, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the relevant series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any lawsuit or other formal legal action seeking any remedy available to the trustee. The trustee may refuse to follow those directions in certain circumstances. No delay or omission in exercising any right or remedy will be treated as a waiver of that right, remedy or Event of Default.

Before you are allowed to bypass your trustee and bring your own lawsuit or other formal legal action or take other steps to enforce your rights or protect your interests relating to the debt securities, the following must occur:

- you must give the trustee written notice that an Event of Default with respect to the relevant series of debt securities has occurred and remains uncured;
- the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all outstanding debt securities of the relevant series must make a written request that the trustee take action because of the default and must offer reasonable indemnity, security or both to the trustee against the costs, expenses and other liabilities of taking that action;
- the trustee must not have taken action for 60 days after receipt of the above notice and offer of indemnity and/or security; and

- the holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series must not have given the trustee a direction inconsistent with the above notice during that 60-day period.

However, you are entitled at any time to bring a lawsuit for the payment of money due on your debt securities on or after the due date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how to give notice or direction to or make a request of the trustee and how to declare or cancel an acceleration of maturity.

Each year, we will furnish to each trustee a written statement of certain of our officers certifying that to their knowledge we are in compliance with the indenture and the debt securities, or else specifying any default.

Waiver of Default

Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series may waive any past defaults other than:

- the payment of principal, any premium or interest; or
- in respect of a covenant that cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each holder.

Merger or Consolidation

Under the terms of the indenture, we are generally permitted to consolidate or merge with another entity. We are also permitted to sell all or substantially all of our assets to another entity. However, we may not take any of these actions unless all the following conditions are met:

- where we merge out of existence or sell substantially all our assets, the resulting entity or transferee must agree to be legally responsible for our obligations under the debt securities;
- the merger or sale of assets must not cause a default on the debt securities and we must not already be in default (unless the merger or sale would cure the default). For purposes of this no-default test, a default would include an Event of Default that has occurred and has not been cured, as described under “Events of Default” above. A default for this purpose would also include any event that would be an Event of Default if the requirements for giving us a notice of default or our default having to exist for a specific period of time were disregarded;
- we must deliver certain certificates and documents to the trustee; and
- we must satisfy any other requirements specified in the prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities.

Modification or Waiver

There are three types of changes we can make to the indenture and the debt securities issued thereunder.

Changes Requiring Your Approval

First, there are changes that we cannot make to your debt securities without your specific approval. The following is a list of those types of changes:

- change the stated maturity of the principal of or interest on a debt security or the terms of any sinking fund with respect to any security;
- reduce any amounts due on a debt security;
- reduce the amount of principal payable upon acceleration of the maturity of an original issue discount or indexed security following a default or upon the redemption thereof or the amount thereof provable in a bankruptcy proceeding;

- adversely affect any right of repayment at the holder’s option;
- change the place or currency of payment on a debt security (except as otherwise described in the prospectus or prospectus supplement);
- impair your right to sue for payment;
- adversely affect any right to convert or exchange a debt security in accordance with its terms;
- modify the subordination provisions in the indenture in a manner that is adverse to outstanding holders of the debt securities;
- reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to modify or amend the indenture;
- reduce the percentage of holders of debt securities whose consent is needed to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture or to waive certain defaults;
- modify any other aspect of the provisions of the indenture dealing with supplemental indentures with the consent of holders, waiver of past defaults, changes to the quorum or voting requirements or the waiver of certain covenants; and
- change any obligation we have to pay additional amounts.

Changes Not Requiring Approval

The second type of change does not require any vote by the holders of the debt securities. This type is limited to clarifications, establishment of the form or terms of new securities of any series as permitted by the indenture and certain other changes that would not adversely affect holders of the outstanding debt securities in any material respect. We also do not need any approval to make any change that affects only debt securities to be issued under the indenture after the change takes effect.

Changes Requiring Majority Approval

Any other change to the indenture and the debt securities would require the following approval:

- if the change affects only one series of debt securities, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of that series; and
- if the change affects more than one series of debt securities issued under the same indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all of the series affected by the change, with all affected series voting together as one class for this purpose.

In each case, the required approval must be given by written consent.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of a series of debt securities issued under the indenture, voting together as one class for this purpose, may waive our compliance with some of our covenants applicable to that series of debt securities. However, we cannot obtain a waiver of a payment default or of any of the matters covered by the bullet points included above under “— Changes Requiring Your Approval.”

Further Details Concerning Voting

When taking a vote, we will use the following rules to decide how much principal to attribute to a debt security:

- for original issue discount securities, we will use the principal amount that would be due and payable on the voting date if the maturity of these debt securities were accelerated to that date because of a default;
- for debt securities whose principal amount is not known (for example, because it is based on an index), we will use the principal face amount at original issuance or a special rule for that debt security described in the prospectus supplement; and

- for debt securities denominated in one or more foreign currencies, we will use the U.S. dollar equivalent.

Debt securities will not be considered outstanding, and therefore not eligible to vote, if we have deposited or set aside in trust money for their payment or redemption or if we, any other obligor, or any affiliate of us or any obligor own such debt securities. Debt securities will also not be eligible to vote if they have been fully defeased as described later under “— Defeasance — Full Defeasance.”

We will generally be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders of outstanding indenture securities that are entitled to vote or take other action under the indenture. However, the record date may not be more than 30 days before the date of the first solicitation of holders to vote on or take such action. If we set a record date for a vote or other action to be taken by holders of one or more series, that vote or action may be taken only by persons who are holders of outstanding indenture securities of those series on the record date and must be taken within eleven months following the record date.

Book-entry and other indirect holders should consult their banks or brokers for information on how approval may be granted or denied if we seek to change the indenture or the debt securities or request a waiver.

Defeasance

The following provisions will be applicable to each series of debt securities unless we state in the applicable prospectus supplement that the provisions of covenant defeasance and full defeasance will not be applicable to that series.

Covenant Defeasance

Under current U.S. federal tax law and the indenture, we can make the deposit described below and be released from some of the restrictive covenants in the indenture under which the particular series was issued. This is called “covenant defeasance.” In that event, you would lose the protection of those restrictive covenants but would gain the protection of having money and government securities set aside in trust to repay your debt securities. If we achieved covenant defeasance and your debt securities were subordinated as described under “— Indenture Provisions — Subordination” below, such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit described in the first bullet below to the payment of amounts due in respect of such debt securities for the benefit of the subordinated debt holders. In order to achieve covenant defeasance, we must do the following:

- we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of a series of debt securities a combination of cash (in such currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) or government obligations applicable to such securities (determined on the basis of the currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates and any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments;
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel confirming that, under current U.S. federal income tax law, we may make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit;
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers’ certificate stating that all conditions precedent to covenant defeasance have been complied with;
- defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or result in a default under, of the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments;
- no default or event of default with respect to such debt securities shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days; and
- satisfy the conditions for covenant defeasance contained in any supplemental indentures.

If we accomplish covenant defeasance, you can still look to us for repayment of the debt securities if there were a shortfall in the trust deposit or the trustee is prevented from making payment. For example, if one of the remaining Events of Default occurred (such as our bankruptcy) and the debt securities became immediately due and payable, there might be such a shortfall. However, there is no assurance that we would have sufficient funds to make payment of the shortfall.

Full Defeasance

If there is a change in U.S. federal tax law or we obtain an IRS ruling, as described in the second bullet below, we can legally release ourselves from all payment and other obligations on the debt securities of a particular series (called “full defeasance”) if we put in place the following other arrangements for you to be repaid:

- we must deposit in trust for the benefit of all holders of a series of debt securities a combination of cash (in such currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) or government obligations applicable to such securities (determined on the basis of the currency in which such securities are then specified as payable at stated maturity) that will generate enough cash to make interest, principal and any other payments on the debt securities on their various due dates and any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments.
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion confirming that there has been a change in current U.S. federal tax law or an IRS ruling that allows us to make the above deposit without causing you to be taxed on the debt securities any differently than if we did not make the deposit. Under current U.S. federal tax law, the deposit and our legal release from the debt securities would be treated as though we paid you your share of the cash and notes or bonds at the time the cash and notes or bonds were deposited in trust in exchange for your debt securities and you would recognize gain or loss on the debt securities at the time of the deposit.
- we must deliver to the trustee a legal opinion of our counsel stating that the above deposit does not require registration by us under the 1940 Act, as amended, and a legal opinion and officers’ certificate stating that all conditions precedent to defeasance have been complied with.
- defeasance must not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, of the indenture or any of our other material agreements or instruments.
- no default or event of default with respect to such debt securities shall have occurred and be continuing and no defaults or events of default related to bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization shall occur during the next 90 days.
- satisfy the conditions for full defeasance contained in any supplemental indentures.

If we ever did accomplish full defeasance, as described above, you would have to rely solely on the trust deposit for repayment of the debt securities. You could not look to us for repayment in the unlikely event of any shortfall. Conversely, the trust deposit would most likely be protected from claims of our lenders and other creditors if we ever became bankrupt or insolvent. If your debt securities were subordinated as described later under “— Indenture Provisions — Subordination”, such subordination would not prevent the trustee under the indenture from applying the funds available to it from the deposit referred to in the first bullet of the preceding paragraph to the payment of amounts due in respect of such debt securities for the benefit of the subordinated debt holders.

Form, Exchange and Transfer of Certificated Registered Securities

If registered debt securities cease to be issued in book-entry form, they will be issued:

- only in fully registered certificated form;
- without interest coupons; and
- unless we indicate otherwise in the prospectus supplement, in denominations of \$1,000 and amounts that are multiples of \$1,000.

Holders may exchange their certificated securities for debt securities of smaller denominations or combined into fewer debt securities of larger denominations, as long as the total principal amount is not changed and as long as the denomination is greater than the minimum denomination for such securities.

Holders may exchange or transfer their certificated securities at the office of the trustee. We have appointed the trustee to act as our agent for registering debt securities in the names of holders transferring debt securities. We may appoint another entity to perform these functions or perform them ourselves.

Holders will not be required to pay a service charge to transfer or exchange their certificated securities, but they may be required to pay any tax or other governmental charge associated with the transfer or exchange. The transfer or exchange will be made only if our transfer agent is satisfied with the holder's proof of legal ownership.

If we have designated additional transfer agents for your debt security, they will be named in the prospectus supplement. We may appoint additional transfer agents or cancel the appointment of any particular transfer agent. We may also approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts.

If any certificated securities of a particular series are redeemable and we redeem less than all the debt securities of that series, we may block the transfer or exchange of those debt securities during the period beginning 15 days before the day we mail the notice of redemption and ending on the day of that mailing, in order to freeze the list of holders to prepare the mailing. We may also refuse to register transfers or exchanges of any certificated securities selected for redemption, except that we will continue to permit transfers and exchanges of the unredeemed portion of any debt security that will be partially redeemed.

If a registered debt security is issued in book-entry form, only the depository will be entitled to transfer and exchange the debt security as described in this subsection, since it will be the sole holder of the debt security.

Resignation of Trustee

Each trustee may resign or be removed with respect to one or more series of indenture securities provided that a successor trustee is appointed to act with respect to these series and has accepted such appointment. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of indenture securities under the indenture, each of the trustees will be a trustee of a trust separate and apart from the trust administered by any other trustee.

Indenture Provisions — Subordination

Upon any distribution of our assets upon our dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization, the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities is to be subordinated to the extent provided in the indenture in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness (as defined below), but our obligation to you to make payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such subordinated debt securities will not otherwise be affected. In addition, no payment on account of principal (or premium, if any), sinking fund or interest, if any, may be made on such subordinated debt securities at any time unless full payment of all amounts due in respect of the principal (and premium, if any), sinking fund and interest on Senior Indebtedness has been made or duly provided for in money or money's worth.

In the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment by us is received by the trustee in respect of subordinated debt securities or by the holders of any of such subordinated debt securities, upon our dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization before all Senior Indebtedness is paid in full, the payment or distribution received by the trustee in respect of such subordinated debt securities or by the holders of any such subordinated debt securities must be paid over to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness or on their behalf for application to the payment of all the Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid until all the Senior Indebtedness has been paid in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness. Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness upon this distribution by us, the holders of such subordinated debt securities will be subrogated to the rights of the holders of the Senior Indebtedness to the extent of payments made to the holders of the Senior Indebtedness out of the distributive share of such subordinated debt securities.

By reason of this subordination, in the event of a distribution of our assets upon our insolvency, certain of our senior creditors may recover more, ratably, than holders of any subordinated debt securities or the holders of any indenture securities that are not Senior Indebtedness. The indenture provides that these subordination provisions will not apply to money and securities held in trust under the defeasance provisions of the indenture.

Senior Indebtedness is defined in the indenture as the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on:

- our indebtedness (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by us), whenever created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, that we have designated as “Senior Indebtedness” for purposes of the indenture and in accordance with the terms of the indenture (including any indenture securities designated as Senior Indebtedness), and
- renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any of this indebtedness.

If this prospectus is being delivered in connection with the offering of a series of indenture securities denominated as subordinated debt securities, the accompanying prospectus supplement will set forth the approximate amount of our Senior Indebtedness and of our other Indebtedness outstanding as of a recent date.

Secured Indebtedness and Ranking

Certain of our indebtedness, including certain series of indenture securities, may be secured. The prospectus supplement for each series of indenture securities will describe the terms of any security interest for such series and will indicate the approximate amount of our secured indebtedness as of a recent date. Any unsecured indenture securities will effectively rank junior to any secured indebtedness, including any secured indenture securities, that we incur in the future to the extent of the value of the assets securing such future secured indebtedness. The debt securities, whether secured or unsecured, of the Company will rank structurally junior to all existing and future indebtedness (including trade payables) incurred by our subsidiaries, financing vehicles or similar facilities.

In the event of our bankruptcy, liquidation, reorganization or other winding up, any of our assets that secure secured debt will be available to pay obligations on unsecured debt securities only after all indebtedness under such secured debt has been repaid in full from such assets. We advise you that there may not be sufficient assets remaining to pay amounts due on any or all unsecured debt securities then outstanding after fulfillment of this obligation. As a result, the holders of unsecured indenture securities may recover less, ratably, than holders of any of our secured indebtedness.

The Trustee under the Indenture

U.S. Bank National Association will serve as the trustee under the indenture.

Certain Considerations Relating to Foreign Currencies

Debt securities denominated or payable in foreign currencies may entail significant risks. These risks include the possibility of significant fluctuations in the foreign currency markets, the imposition or modification of foreign exchange controls and potential illiquidity in the secondary market. These risks will vary depending upon the currency or currencies involved and will be more fully described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

DESCRIPTION OF OUR WARRANTS

The following is a general description of the terms of the warrants we may issue from time to time. Particular terms of any warrants we offer will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to such warrants.

We may issue warrants to purchase shares of our common stock, preferred stock or debt securities. Such warrants may be issued independently or together with shares of common stock, preferred stock or debt securities and may be attached or separate from such securities. We will issue each series of warrants under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency for or with holders or beneficial owners of warrants.

A prospectus supplement will describe the particular terms of any series of warrants we may issue, including the following:

- the title of such warrants;
- the aggregate number of such warrants;
- the price or prices at which such warrants will be issued;
- the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which the price of such warrants may be payable;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities with which the warrants are issued and the number of warrants issued with each such security or each principal amount of such security;
- in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the principal amount of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which this principal amount of debt securities may be purchased upon such exercise;
- in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the number of shares of common stock or preferred stock purchasable upon exercise of one warrant and the price at which and the currency or currencies, including composite currencies, in which these shares may be purchased upon such exercise;
- the date on which the right to exercise such warrants shall commence and the date on which such right will expire;
- whether such warrants will be issued in registered form or bearer form;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of such warrants which may be exercised at any one time;
- if applicable, the date on and after which such warrants and the related securities will be separately transferable;
- information with respect to book-entry procedures, if any;
- the terms of the securities issuable upon exercise of the warrants;
- if applicable, a discussion of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations; and
- any other terms of such warrants, including terms, procedures and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of such warrants.

We and the warrant agent may amend or supplement the warrant agreement for a series of warrants without the consent of the holders of the warrants issued thereunder to effect changes that are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and that do not materially and adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants.

Each warrant will entitle the holder to purchase for cash such common stock or preferred stock at the exercise price or such principal amount of debt securities as shall in each case be set forth in, or be determinable as set forth in, the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants offered thereby. Warrants may be exercised as set forth in the prospectus supplement beginning on the date specified therein and continuing until the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants will become void.

Upon receipt of payment and a warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the prospectus supplement, we will, as soon as practicable, forward the securities purchasable upon such exercise. If less than all of the warrants represented by such warrant certificate are exercised, a new warrant certificate will be issued for the remaining warrants. If we so indicate in the applicable prospectus supplement, holders of the warrants may surrender securities as all or part of the exercise price for warrants.

Prior to exercising their warrants, holders of warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities purchasable upon such exercise, including, in the case of warrants to purchase debt securities, the right to receive principal, premium, if any, or interest payments, on the debt securities purchasable upon exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture or, in the case of warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock, the right to receive dividends or other distributions, if any, or payments upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up or to exercise any voting rights.

Under the 1940 Act, we may generally only offer warrants provided that (1) the warrants expire by their terms within ten years; (2) the exercise or conversion price is not less than the current market value at the date of issuance; (3) our stockholders authorize the issuance of such warrants, and our Board of Directors approves such issuance on the basis that the issuance is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders; and (4) if the warrants are accompanied by other securities, the warrants are not separately transferable unless no class of such warrants and the securities accompanying them has been publicly distributed. The 1940 Act also provides that the amount of our voting securities that would result from the exercise of all outstanding warrants at the time of issuance may not exceed 25% of our outstanding voting securities. As of the date of this prospectus, our stockholders have not authorized any issuance of warrants beyond those that would otherwise be permitted without stockholder approval under the 1940 Act.

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may offer, from time to time, in more than one offering, up to \$400,000,000 of common stock, preferred stock, subscription rights to purchase shares of common stock, warrants and debt securities, in one or more underwritten public offerings, at-the-market offerings to or through a market maker or into an existing trading market for our securities, on an exchange or otherwise, negotiated transactions, block trades, best efforts or a combination of these methods. The holders of our common stock will indirectly bear any fees and expenses in connection with any such offering.

We may sell our securities through underwriters or dealers, directly to one or more purchasers, through agents or through a combination of any such methods of sale. In the case of a rights offering, the applicable prospectus supplement will set forth the number of shares of our common stock issuable upon the exercise of each right and the other terms of such rights offering. Any underwriter or agent involved in the offer and sale of our securities will be named in the applicable prospectus supplement. A prospectus supplement or supplements will also describe the terms of the offering of our securities, including: the purchase price and the proceeds we will receive from the sale; any over-allotment options under which underwriters may purchase additional securities from us; any agency fees or underwriting discounts and other items constituting agents' or underwriters' compensation; the public offering price; any discounts or concessions allowed or re-allowed or paid to dealers; and any securities exchange or market on which our securities may be listed. Only underwriters or agents named in the prospectus supplement will be underwriters or agents of securities offered by the prospectus supplement.

The distribution of the securities may be effected from time to time in one or more transactions at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed, at prevailing market prices at the time of sale, at prices related to such prevailing market prices, or at negotiated prices, provided, however, that the offering price per share of our common stock, less any underwriting commissions or discounts, must equal or exceed the net asset value per share of our common stock at the time of the offering except (i) in connection with a rights offering to our existing stockholders, (ii) with the prior approval of the majority of our common stockholders, or (iii) under such other circumstances as the SEC may permit. Any offering of securities by us that requires the consent of the majority of our common stockholders, must occur, if at all, within one year after receiving such consent. The price at which our securities may be distributed may represent a discount from prevailing market prices. As an investor in our securities, you will indirectly bear the expenses incurred in connection with all of the distribution activities described herein.

In connection with the sale of our securities, underwriters or agents may receive compensation from us or from purchasers of our securities, for whom they may act as agents, in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions. Underwriters may sell our securities to or through dealers and such dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents. Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of our securities may be deemed to be underwriters under the Securities Act, and any discounts and commissions they receive from us and any profit realized by them on the resale of our securities may be deemed to be underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Any such underwriter or agent will be identified and any such compensation received from us will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The maximum aggregate commission or discount to be received by any member of FINRA or independent broker-dealer will not be greater than 10% of the gross proceeds of the sale of our securities offered pursuant to this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement. We may also reimburse the underwriter or agent for certain fees and legal expenses incurred by it.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing transactions, short-covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum price. Syndicate-covering or other short-covering transactions involve purchases of our securities, either through exercise of the option to purchase additional shares from us or in the open market after the distribution is completed, to cover short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when our securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a stabilizing or covering transaction to cover short positions. Those activities may cause the price of our securities to be higher than it would otherwise be. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue any of the activities at any time.

Any underwriters that are qualified market makers on the Nasdaq Capital Market may engage in passive market making transactions in our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market in accordance with Regulation M under the Exchange Act, during the business day prior to the pricing of the offering, before the commencement of offers or sales of our common stock. Passive market makers must comply with applicable volume and price limitations and must be identified as passive market makers. In general, a passive market maker must display its bid at a price not in excess of the highest independent bid for such security; if all independent bids are lowered below the passive market maker's bid, however, the passive market maker's bid must then be lowered when certain purchase limits are exceeded. Passive market making may stabilize the market price of our common stock at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market and, if commenced, may be discontinued at any time.

We may sell our securities directly or through agents we designate from time to time. We will name any agent involved in the offering and sale of our securities and we will describe any commissions we will pay the agent in the prospectus supplement. Unless the prospectus supplement states otherwise, our agent will act on a best-efforts basis for the period of its appointment.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, each class or series of securities will be a new issue with no trading market, other than our common stock, which is traded on the Nasdaq Capital Market. We may elect to list any other class or series of securities on any exchanges, but we are not obligated to do so. We cannot guarantee the liquidity of the trading markets for any securities.

Under agreements that we may enter, underwriters, dealers and agents who participate in the distribution of our securities may be entitled to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or contribution with respect to payments that the agents or underwriters may make with respect to these liabilities. Underwriters, dealers and agents may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will authorize underwriters or other persons acting as our agents to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase our securities from us pursuant to contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date. Institutions with which such contracts may be made include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies, educational and charitable institutions and others, but in all cases such institutions must be approved by us. The obligations of any purchaser under any such contract will be subject to the condition that the purchase of our securities shall not at the time of delivery be prohibited under the laws of the jurisdiction to which such purchaser is subject. The underwriters and such other agents will not have any responsibility in respect of the validity or performance of such contracts. Such contracts will be subject only to those conditions set forth in the prospectus supplement, and the prospectus supplement will set forth the commission payable for solicitation of such contracts.

We may enter into derivative transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. If the applicable prospectus supplement indicates, in connection with those derivatives, the third parties may sell securities covered by this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement, including in short sale transactions. If so, the third party may use securities pledged by us or borrowed from us or others to settle those sales or to close out any related open borrowings of stock, and may use securities received from us in settlement of those derivatives to close out any related open borrowings of stock. The third parties in such sale transactions will be underwriters and, if not identified in this prospectus, will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

In order to comply with the securities laws of certain states, if applicable, our securities offered hereby will be sold in such jurisdictions only through registered or licensed brokers or dealers.

CUSTODIAN, TRANSFER AND DISTRIBUTION PAYING AGENT AND REGISTRAR

Our securities are held under a custody agreement by U.S. Bank National Association. The address of the custodian is One Federal Street, Boston, MA 02110. American Stock Transfer & Trust Company acts as our transfer agent, distribution paying agent and registrar. The principal business address of our transfer agent is 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219 or by phone at (800) 937-5449.

BROKERAGE ALLOCATION AND OTHER PRACTICES

Though we generally acquire and dispose of our investments in privately negotiated transactions, including in connection with private secondary market transactions, we also use brokers in the normal course of our business. We paid \$34,177, \$10,000 and \$122,563 in brokerage commissions for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively, for an aggregate sum of \$166,741. Subject to policies established by our Board of Directors, our investment team is primarily responsible for the execution of the publicly traded securities portion of our portfolio transactions and the allocation of brokerage commissions. We do not expect to execute transactions through any particular broker or dealer, but will seek to obtain the best net results for us, taking into account such factors as price (including the applicable brokerage commission or dealer spread), size of order, difficulty of execution, and operational facilities of the firm and the firm's risk and skill in positioning blocks of securities. While we will generally seek reasonably competitive trade execution costs, we will not necessarily pay the lowest spread or commission available. Subject to applicable legal requirements, we may select a broker based partly upon brokerage or research services provided to us. In return for such services, we may pay a higher commission than other brokers would charge if we determine in good faith that such commission is reasonable in relation to the services provided.

LEGAL MATTERS

Certain legal matters in connection with the securities offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP, Washington, D.C. Certain legal matters in connection with any offering pursuant to this prospectus, will be passed upon for the underwriters, if any, by counsel named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2019 of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so included in reliance upon the report of Marcum LLP, independent registered public accountants, as stated in their report incorporated by reference. The audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2018 and 2017 of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so included in reliance upon the report of Deloitte & Touche LLP, independent registered public accountants, as stated in their report incorporated by reference.

The senior securities table as of December 31, 2019 of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries included in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so included in reliance upon the report of Marcum LLP, independent registered public accountants, as stated in their report appearing herein. The senior securities table as of December 31, 2018, 2017, 2016 and 2015 of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries included in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so included in reliance upon the report of Deloitte & Touche LLP, independent registered public accountants, as stated in their report appearing herein.

Marcum LLP's principal business address is 1 Montgomery Street, Suite 1700, San Francisco, California 94104. Deloitte & Touche LLP's principal business address is 555 Mission Street, San Francisco, CA 94105.

INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN INFORMATION BY REFERENCE

This prospectus is part of a registration statement that we have filed with the SEC. Pursuant to the Small Business Credit Availability Act, we are allowed to “incorporate by reference” the information that we file with the SEC, which means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is considered a part of this prospectus from the date we file that document. Any reports filed by us with the SEC subsequent to the date of this prospectus and before the date that any offering of any securities by means of this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement is terminated will automatically update and, where applicable, supersede any information contained in this prospectus or incorporated by reference in this prospectus.

We incorporate by reference into this prospectus our filings listed below and any future filings that we may file with the SEC under Section 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, subsequent to the date of this prospectus until all of the securities offered by this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement have been sold or we otherwise terminate the offering of these securities; provided, however, that information “furnished” under Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K or other information “furnished” to the SEC which is not deemed filed is not incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement. Information that we file with the SEC subsequent to the date of this prospectus will automatically update and may supersede information in this prospectus, any accompanying prospectus supplement and information previously filed with the SEC.

This prospectus and any accompanying prospectus supplement incorporate by reference the documents set forth below that have previously been filed with the SEC:

- Annual Report on [Form 10-K](#) for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019 filed with the SEC on March 13, 2020;
- Quarterly Report on [Form 10-Q](#) for the three months ended March 31, 2020, filed with the SEC on May 8, 2020;
- Current Report on Form 8-K filed on [April 29, 2020](#), [May 8, 2020](#), [June 16, 2020](#) and [June 24, 2020](#);
- Our Definitive Proxy Statement on [Schedule 14A](#), filed with the SEC on April 29, 2020 (to the extent incorporated by reference into Part III of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2019); and
- The description of our common stock contained in [Exhibit 4.4](#) of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2019, which updated the description thereof in our Registration Statement on [Form 8-A](#) (File No. 001-35156), as filed with the SEC on April 27, 2011, including any amendment or report filed for the purpose of updating such description prior to the termination of the offering of the common stock registered hereby.

To obtain copies of these filings, see “Available Information” in this prospectus, or you may request a copy of these filings (other than exhibits, unless the exhibits are specifically incorporated by reference into these documents) at no cost by writing or calling the following address and telephone number:

SuRo Capital Corp.
One Sansome Street, Suite 730
San Francisco, CA 94104
(650) 235-4679

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with different or additional information, and you should not rely on such information if you receive it. We are not making an offer of or soliciting an offer to buy, any securities in any state or other jurisdiction where such offer or sale is not permitted. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus or in the documents incorporated by reference is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of this prospectus or those documents.

AVAILABLE INFORMATION

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form N-2 we filed with the SEC under the Securities Act. This prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement, some of which is contained in exhibits to the registration statement as permitted by the rules and regulations of the SEC. For further information with respect to us and the securities we are offering under this prospectus, we refer you to the registration statement, including the exhibits filed as a part of the registration statement. Statements contained in this prospectus concerning the contents of any contract or any other document are not necessarily complete. If a contract or other document has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement, please see the copy of the contract or document that has been filed. Each statement in this prospectus relating to a contract or document filed as an exhibit is qualified in all respects by the filed exhibit.

We are required to file with or submit to the SEC annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements and other information meeting the informational requirements of the Exchange Act. The SEC maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information filed electronically by us with the SEC, which are available free of charge on the SEC's website at <http://www.sec.gov>. This information will also be available free of charge by contacting us at One Sansome Street, Suite 730, San Francisco, California 94104, by telephone at (650) 235-4679, or on our website at <http://www.surocap.com>. Information contained on our website or on the SEC's web site about us is not incorporated into this prospectus and you should not consider information contained on our website or on the SEC's website to be part of this prospectus.



SuRo Capital Corp.

**Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Subscription Rights
Debt Securities
Warrants**

PROSPECTUS
, 2020

PART C — OTHER INFORMATION

ITEM 25. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND EXHIBITS

1. Financial Statements

The audited consolidated financial statements of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries as of the year ended December 31, 2019 have been incorporated by reference in this registration statement in Part A of this Registration Statement in reliance on the report of Marcum LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

The audited consolidated financial statements of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries as of the year ended December 31, 2018 and for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2018 have been incorporated by reference in this registration statement in Part A of this Registration Statement in reliance on the report of Deloitte & Touche LLP, independent registered public accountants, given on the authority of said firm as experts in auditing and accounting.

2. Exhibits

Exhibit Number	Description
a.1	Articles of Amendment and Restatement⁽¹⁾
a.2	Articles of Amendment⁽²⁾
a.3	Articles of Amendment⁽¹²⁾
a.4	Articles of Amendment⁽¹⁸⁾
b.	Second Amended and Restated Bylaws⁽¹⁸⁾
d.1	Form of Common Stock Certificate⁽⁴⁾
d.2	Pledge and Escrow Agreement, dated September 17, 2013, by and between the Registrant and the U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee⁽²⁾
d.3	Base Indenture, dated March 28, 2018, by and between the Registrant and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee*
d.4	First Supplemental Indenture, dated March 28, 2018, relating to the 4.75% Convertible Senior Notes due 2023, by and between the Registrant and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee⁽¹¹⁾
d.5	Form of 4.75% Convertible Senior Note due 2023 (incorporated by reference to exhibit d.4)⁽¹¹⁾
d.6	Statement of Eligibility of Trustee on Form T-1*
e.	Dividend Reinvestment Plan⁽¹⁾
h.	Form of Underwriting Agreement⁽⁵⁾
i.1	SuRo Capital Corp. Amended and Restated 2019 Equity Incentive Plan⁽¹⁴⁾
i.2	Form of SuRo Capital Corp. Restricted Stock Agreement (Non-Employee Directors)⁽¹⁴⁾
i.3	Form of SuRo Capital Corp. Restricted Stock Agreement (Employees and Officers)⁽¹⁴⁾
i.4	Form of SuRO Capital Corp. Non-Qualified Stock Option Award⁽¹⁴⁾
j.	Custody Agreement by and between the Registrant and U.S. Bank National Association⁽³⁾
k.1	Form of Indemnification Agreement by and between Registrant and each of its directors⁽¹⁾
k.2	Amended and Restated Trademark License Agreement by and between the Company and GSV Asset Management, LLC⁽¹³⁾
k.3	Consulting Agreement by and between the Company and Michael T. Moe⁽¹³⁾
k.4	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated April 28, 2020, by and between Sutter Rock Capital Corp. and Mark D. Klein⁽¹⁶⁾
k.5	Amended and Restated Employment Agreement, dated April 28, 2020, by and between Sutter Rock Capital Corp. and Allison Green⁽¹⁶⁾

l.	Opinion and Consent of Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP*
n.1	Consent of Marcum LLP*
n.2	Consent of Deloitte & Touche LLP*
n.3	Report of Marcum LLP regarding the Senior Securities table*
n.4	Report of Deloitte & Touche LLP regarding the Senior Securities table*
r.1	Code of Ethics⁽¹⁵⁾
r.2	Code of Business Conduct and Ethics⁽¹⁵⁾
99.1	Form of Prospectus Supplement for Common Stock Offerings⁽⁸⁾
99.2	Form of Prospectus Supplement For Preferred Stock Offerings⁽⁸⁾
99.3	Form of Prospectus Supplement For Rights Offerings⁽⁸⁾
99.4	Form of Prospectus Supplement For Debt Securities Offerings⁽⁸⁾
99.5	Form of Prospectus Supplement For Warrants Offerings⁽⁸⁾

* Filed herewith.

- (1) Previously filed in connection with Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-171578), filed on March 30, 2011, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (2) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 814-00852), filed on June 1, 2011, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (3) Previously filed in connection with Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-171578), filed on April 15, 2011, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (4) Previously filed in connection with Pre-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-175655), filed on September 20, 2011, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (5) Previously filed in connection with Pre-Effective Amendment No. 1 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-180416), filed on May 7, 2012, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (6) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K (File No. 814-00852), filed on March 14, 2013, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (7) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 814-00852), filed on September 18, 2013, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (8) Previously filed in connection with the Pre-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-191307), filed on January 17, 2014, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (9) Previously filed in connection with the Pre-Effective Amendment No. 5 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-191307), filed on July 21, 2016, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (10) Previously filed in connection with Post-Effective Amendment No. 2 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-191307), filed on May 8, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference.
- (11) Previously filed in connection with Post-Effective Amendment No. 3 to the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form N-2 (File No. 333-191307), filed on March 28, 2018, and incorporated herein by reference.
- (12) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 814-00852) filed on June 16, 2020, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (13) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 814-00852) filed on March 14, 2019, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (14) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 (File No. 333-239662) filed on July 2, 2020, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (15) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K (File No. 814-00852), filed on March 13, 2020, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (16) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q (File No. 814-00852) filed on May 9, 2019, and incorporated by reference herein.
- (17) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-Q (File No. 814-00852), filed on May 8, 2020 and incorporated by reference herein.
- (18) Previously filed in connection with the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K (File No. 814-00852) filed on June 16, 2020, and incorporated by reference herein.



ITEM 26. MARKETING ARRANGEMENTS

The information contained under the heading “Plan of Distribution” in Part A of this Registration Statement is incorporated herein by reference and any information concerning any underwriters for a particular offering will be contained in the prospectus supplement related to that offering.

ITEM 27. OTHER EXPENSES OF ISSUANCE AND DISTRIBUTION

SEC registration fee	\$	5,192
FINRA filing fee	\$	60,000*
Nasdaq Capital Market	\$	30,000*
Printing and postage	\$	75,000*
Legal fees and expenses	\$	500,000*
Accounting fees and expenses	\$	100,000*
Sales and marketing	\$	200,000*
Total	\$	<u>970,192*</u>

* Estimated.

ITEM 28. PERSONS CONTROLLED BY OR UNDER COMMON CONTROL

The following list sets forth each of our consolidated subsidiaries, the state or country under whose laws the subsidiary is organized, and the percentage of voting securities or membership interests owned by us in such subsidiary:

GSV Capital Lending, LLC (Delaware)	100%
GSVC AE Holdings, Inc. (Delaware)	100%
GSVC AV Holdings, Inc. (Delaware)	100%
GSVC SW Holdings, Inc. (Delaware)	100%
GSVC SVDS Holdings, Inc. (Delaware)	100%

Currently, each of the Company’s subsidiaries is consolidated with the Company for financial reporting purposes.

In addition, we may be deemed to control certain portfolio companies. See “Portfolio Companies” in Part A of this Registration Statement.

ITEM 29. NUMBER OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

The following table sets forth the number of record holders of the Registrant’s common stock at June 30, 2020:

Title of Class	Number of Record Holders
Common Stock, par value \$0.01 per share	3

ITEM 30. INDEMNIFICATION

Directors and Officers

Reference is made to Section 2-418 of the Maryland General Corporation Law (the “MGCL”), Article VII of the Registrant’s Articles of Amendment and Restatement and Article XI of the Registrant’s Bylaws.

The MGCL permits a Maryland corporation to include in its charter a provision limiting the liability of its directors and officers to the corporation and its stockholders for money damages except for liability resulting from (a) actual receipt of an improper benefit or profit in money, property or services or (b) active and deliberate dishonesty established by a final judgment as being material to the cause of action. The Registrant’s charter contains such a provision which eliminates directors’ and officers’ liability to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL, subject to the requirements of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “1940 Act”).

The Registrant’s charter authorizes the Registrant, to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as the Registrant’s director or officer and at the Registrant’s request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee, from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse their reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. The Registrant’s bylaws obligate the Registrant, to the maximum extent permitted by the MGCL and subject to the requirements of the 1940 Act, to indemnify any present or former director or officer or any individual who, while serving as the Registrant’s director or officer and at the Registrant’s request, serves or has served another corporation, real estate investment trust, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan or other enterprise as a director, officer, partner or trustee and who is made, or threatened to be made, a party to the proceeding by reason of his or her service in that capacity from and against any claim or liability to which that person may become subject or which that person may incur by reason of his or her service in any such capacity and to pay or reimburse his or her reasonable expenses in advance of final disposition of a proceeding. The charter and bylaws also permit the Registrant to indemnify and advance expenses to any person who served a predecessor of the Registrant in any of the capacities described above and any of the Registrant’s employees or agents or any employees or agents of the Registrant’s predecessor. In accordance with the 1940 Act, the Registrant will not indemnify any person for any liability to which such person would be subject by reason of such person’s willful misfeasance, bad faith, gross negligence or reckless disregard of the duties involved in the conduct of his or her office.

The MGCL requires a corporation (unless its charter provides otherwise, which the Registrant’s charter does not) to indemnify a director or officer who has been successful in the defense of any proceeding to which he or she is made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of his or her service in that capacity. The MGCL permits a corporation to indemnify its present and former directors and officers, among others, against judgments, penalties, fines, settlements and reasonable expenses actually incurred by them in connection with any proceeding to which they may be made, or threatened to be made, a party by reason of their service in those or other capacities unless it is established that (a) the act or omission of the director or officer was material to the matter giving rise to the proceeding and (1) was committed in bad faith or (2) was the result of active and deliberate dishonesty, (b) the director or officer actually received an improper personal benefit in money, property or services or (c) in the case of any criminal proceeding, the director or officer had reasonable cause to believe that the act or omission was unlawful. However, under the MGCL, a Maryland corporation may not indemnify for an adverse judgment in a suit by or in the right of the corporation or for a judgment of liability on the basis that a personal benefit was improperly received unless, in either case, a court orders indemnification, and then only for expenses. In addition, the MGCL permits a corporation to advance reasonable expenses to a director or officer in advance of final disposition of a proceeding upon the corporation’s receipt of (a) a written affirmation by the director or officer of his or her good faith belief that he or she has met the standard of conduct necessary for indemnification by the corporation and (b) a written undertaking by him or her or on his or her behalf to repay the amount paid or reimbursed by the corporation if it is ultimately determined that the standard of conduct was not met.

ITEM 31. BUSINESS AND OTHER CONNECTIONS OF INVESTMENT ADVISER

Not Applicable.

ITEM 32. LOCATION OF ACCOUNTS AND RECORDS

All accounts, books, and other documents required to be maintained by Section 31(a) of the 1940 Act, and the rules thereunder are maintained at the offices of:

- (1) the Registrant, SuRo Capital Corp., One Sansome Street, Suite 730, San Francisco, CA 94104
- (2) the Transfer Agent, American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, 6201 15th Avenue, Brooklyn, New York 11219 or by phone at (800) 937-5449;
- (3) the Custodian, U.S. Bank National Association, One Federal Street, Boston, MA, 02110; and
- (4) the sub-administrator, SS&C Technologies, 580 California Street, Suite 200, San Francisco, CA 94104.

ITEM 33. MANAGEMENT SERVICES

Not applicable.

ITEM 34. UNDERTAKINGS

(1) Not applicable.

(2) Not applicable.

(3) Registrant hereby undertakes:

(a) to file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) to include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act");

(ii) to reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and

(iii) to include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

provided, however, that paragraphs 3(a)(i), (ii), and (iii) of this section do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act that are incorporated by reference into the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

(b) that, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of those securities at the time shall be deemed to be the initial *bona fide* offering thereof;

(c) to remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering;

(d) that, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act to any purchaser:

(i) if the Registrant is relying on Rule 430B:

(A) Each prospectus filed by the Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(B) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (x), or (xi) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof; provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date; or

(ii) if the Registrant is subject to Rule 430C: each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the Securities Act as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A under the Securities Act, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness; *Provided, however*, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use;

(e) that for the purpose of determining liability of the Registrant under the Securities Act to any purchaser in the initial distribution of securities:

The undersigned Registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned Registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned Registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to the purchaser:

- (i) any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned Registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424 under the Securities Act;
- (ii) any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned Registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned Registrants;
- (iii) the portion of any other free writing prospectus or advertisement pursuant to Rule 482 under the Securities Act relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned Registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned Registrant; and
- (iv) any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned Registrant to the purchaser.

(4) Not applicable.

- (5) The Registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act, each filing of the Registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
 - (6) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the Registrant, the Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the Registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.
 - (7) The Registrant undertakes to send by first class mail or other means designed to ensure equally prompt delivery within two business days of receipt of a written or oral request, any prospectus or Statement of Additional Information.
-

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement on Form N-2 to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of San Francisco, in the State of California, on the 2nd day of July, 2020.

SURO CAPITAL CORP.

By: /s/ Mark D. Klein

Mark D. Klein

Chief Executive Officer and President

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENT, that each person whose signature appears below hereby constitutes and appoints Mark D. Klein as true and lawful attorney-in-fact and agent with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him and in his name, place and stead, in any and all capacities to sign any and all amendments to this Registration Statement (including post-effective amendments, or any abbreviated registration statement and any amendments thereto filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) and otherwise), and to file the same, with all exhibits thereto, and other documents in connection therewith, with the SEC granting unto said attorney-in-fact and agent the full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in and about the foregoing, as to all intents and purposes as either of them might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorney-in-fact and agent, or his substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this Registration Statement on Form N-2 has been signed by the following persons, in the capacities and on the dates indicated below. The document may be executed by the signatories hereto on any number of counterparts, all of which constituted one and the same instrument.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ Mark D. Klein</u> Mark D. Klein	Chief Executive Officer, President and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	July 2, 2020
<u>/s/ Allison Green</u> Allison Green	Chief Financial Officer, Chief Compliance Officer, Treasurer and Corporate Secretary (Principal Financial and Accounting Officer)	July 2, 2020
<u>/s/ Leonard A. Potter</u> Leonard A. Potter	Director	July 2, 2020
<u>/s/ Ronald M. Lott</u> Ronald M. Lott	Director	July 2, 2020
<u>/s/ Marc Mazur</u> Marc Mazur	Director	July 2, 2020
<u>/s/ Lisa Westley</u> Lisa Westley	Director	July 2, 2020

GSV CAPITAL CORP.,

Issuer

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,

Trustee

Indenture

Dated as of March 28, 2018

Providing for the Issuance

of

Debt Securities

GSV CAPITAL CORP.
Reconciliation and tie between Trust Indenture Act of 1939
and Indenture, dated as of March 28, 2018

Trust Indenture Act Section		<u>Indenture Section</u>
§ 310	(a)(1)	Section 607
	(a)(2)	Section 607
	(b)	Section 609
§ 312	(c)	Section 701
§ 314	(a)	Section 704
	(a)(4)	Section 1005
	(c)(1)	Section 102
	(c)(2)	Section 102
	(e)	Section 102
§ 315	(b)	Section 601
§ 316	(a) (last sentence)	Section 101 (“Outstanding”)
	(a)(1)(A)	Section 502, Section 512
	(a)(1)(B)	Section 513
	(b)	Section 508
§ 317	(a)(1)	Section 503
	(a)(2)	Section 504
§ 318	(a)	Section 111
	(c)	Section 111

NOTE: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be a part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Article</u> : <u>Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE ONE. DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
Section 101. Definitions	1
Section 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions	10
Section 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	11
Section 104. Acts of Holders	11
Section 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company	13
Section 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver	13
Section 107. Conflict with TIA	14
Section 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	14
Section 109. Successors and Assigns	14
Section 110. Separability Clause	14
Section 111. Benefits of Indenture	14
Section 112. Governing Law	14
Section 113. Legal Holidays	14
Section 114. Submission to Jurisdiction	15
ARTICLE TWO. SECURITIES FORMS	15
Section 201. Forms of Securities	15
Section 202. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	15
Section 203. Securities Issuable in Global Form	16
ARTICLE THREE. THE SECURITIES	17
Section 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	17
Section 302. Denominations	20
Section 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	21
Section 304. Temporary Securities	22
Section 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange	23
Section 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	25
Section 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset	26
Section 308. Optional Extension of Maturity	28
Section 309. Persons Deemed Owners	29

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

<u>Article; Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Section 310. Cancellation	30
Section 311. Computation of Interest	30
Section 312. Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities	30
Section 313. Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent	34
Section 314. CUSIP Numbers	34
ARTICLE FOUR. SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE	35
Section 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	35
Section 402. Application of Trust Funds	36
ARTICLE FIVE. REMEDIES	36
Section 501. Events of Default	36
Section 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	38
Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	39
Section 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	40
Section 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	40
Section 506. Application of Money Collected	41
Section 507. Limitation on Suits	41
Section 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	42
Section 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies	42
Section 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative	42
Section 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver	43
Section 512. Control by Holders of Securities	43
Section 513. Waiver of Past Defaults	43
Section 514. Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	44
ARTICLE SIX. THE TRUSTEE	44
Section 601. Notice of Defaults	44
Section 602. Certain Rights and Duties of Trustee	44
Section 603. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	47
Section 604. May Hold Securities	48
Section 605. Money Held in Trust	48
Section 606. Compensation and Reimbursement and Indemnification of Trustee	48

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

<u>Article; Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Section 607. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	49
Section 608. Disqualification; Conflicting Interests	49
Section 609. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	49
Section 610. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	51
Section 611. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	52
Section 612. Appointment of Authenticating Agent	53
ARTICLE SEVEN. HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY	54
Section 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	54
Section 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	55
Section 703. Reports by Trustee	55
Section 704. Reports by Company	56
Section 705. Calculation of Original Issue Discount	56
ARTICLE EIGHT. CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER	57
Section 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	57
Section 802. Successor Person Substituted	57
ARTICLE NINE. SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	58
Section 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders	58
Section 902. Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders	59
Section 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures	60
Section 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures	60
Section 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	60
Section 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	60
ARTICLE TEN. COVENANTS	61
Section 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest	61
Section 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency	61
Section 1003. Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust	62
Section 1004. Additional Amounts	63
Section 1005. Statement as to Compliance	63
Section 1006. Waiver of Certain Covenants	64
ARTICLE ELEVEN. REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	64

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

<u>Article; Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Section 1101. Applicability of Article	64
Section 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	64
Section 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed	65
Section 1104. Notice of Redemption	65
Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price	66
Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date	67
Section 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part	67
ARTICLE TWELVE. SINKING FUNDS	67
Section 1201. Applicability of Article	67
Section 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	68
Section 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	68
ARTICLE THIRTEEN. REPAYMENT AT THE OPTION OF HOLDERS	69
Section 1301. Applicability of Article	69
Section 1302. Repayment of Securities	69
Section 1303. Exercise of Option	69
Section 1304. When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable	70
Section 1305. Securities Repaid in Part	70
ARTICLE FOURTEEN. DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE	70
Section 1401. Applicability of Article; Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	70
Section 1402. Defeasance and Discharge	71
Section 1403. Covenant Defeasance	71
Section 1404. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance	72
Section 1405. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions	73
ARTICLE FIFTEEN. MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES	74
Section 1501. Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	74
Section 1502. Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	74
Section 1503. Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	75
Section 1504. Quorum; Action	75

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

<u>Article; Section</u>	<u>Page</u>
Section 1505. Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	76
Section 1506. Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	77
ARTICLE SIXTEEN. SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES	77
Section 1601. Agreement to Subordinate	77
Section 1602. Distribution on Dissolution, Liquidation and Reorganization; Subrogation of Subordinated Securities	77
Section 1603. No Payment on Subordinated Securities in Event of Default on Senior Indebtedness	79
Section 1604. Payments on Subordinated Securities Permitted	79
Section 1605. Authorization of Holders to Trustee to Effect Subordination	80
Section 1606. Notices to Trustee	80
Section 1607. Trustee as Holder of Senior Indebtedness	80
Section 1608. Modifications of Terms of Senior Indebtedness	81
Section 1609. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent	81

INDENTURE, dated as of March 28, 2018, between GSV CAPITAL CORP., a Maryland corporation (the “Company”), having its principal office at 2925 Woodside Road, Woodside, CA 94062, and U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association, as trustee (the “Trustee”), having its office at One Federal Street, 3rd Floor, Boston, MA 02110.

RECITALS OF THE COMPANY

A. The Company deems it necessary to issue from time to time for its lawful purposes debt securities (the “Securities”) evidencing its secured or unsecured indebtedness, which may or may not be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (as defined herein) (including the Company), and has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of the Securities, to be issued in one or more series, unlimited as to principal amount, to bear such rates of interest, to mature at such times and to have such other provisions as shall be fixed as hereinafter provided.

B. This Indenture (as defined herein) is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

C. All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid and legally binding agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders (as defined herein) thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities, or of a series thereof, as follows:

ARTICLE ONE. DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

Section 101. Definitions.

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

(1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article One, and include the plural as well as the singular and, pursuant to Section 301, any such item may, with respect to any particular series of Securities, be amended or modified or specified as being inapplicable;

(2) all other terms used herein that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act (as defined herein), either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein, and the terms “cash transaction” and “self-liquidating paper,” as used in Section 311 of the Trust Indenture Act, shall have the meanings assigned to them in the rules of the Commission (as defined herein) adopted under the Trust Indenture Act;

(3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America; and

(4) the words “herein”, “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

Certain terms, used in other Articles herein, are defined in those Articles.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holder of a Security, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Additional Amounts” means any additional amounts that are required by a Security or by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, under circumstances specified therein, to be paid by the Company in respect of certain taxes imposed on certain Holders and that are owing to such Holders.

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any authenticating agent appointed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 612 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more series.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company, the executive committee or any committee of that board duly authorized to act hereunder.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day,” when used with respect to any Place of Payment or any other particular location referred to in this Indenture or in the Securities, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, each Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday that is not a day on which banking institutions in that Place of Payment or particular location are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to close.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or, if at any time after execution of this instrument such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties on such date.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“Company Request” and “Company Order” mean, respectively, a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by the Chief Executive Officer, President or a Vice President of the Company, and by the Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer, Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Conversion Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(d).

“Conversion Event” means the cessation of use of (i) a Foreign Currency both by the government of the country which issued such currency and for the settlement of transactions by a central bank or other public institutions of or within the international banking community, (ii) the Euro within the Economic and Monetary Union of the European Union, or (iii) any currency unit (or composite currency) other than the Euro for the purposes for which it was established.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any time its corporate trust business shall be administered, which office at the date hereof for purposes of Section 1002 only is located at _____, Attention: GSV Capital Corp., and for all other purposes is located at _____, Attention: GSV Capital Corp., or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company).

“Corporation” includes corporations, associations, companies and business trusts.

“Currency” means any currency or currencies, composite currency or currency unit or currency units issued by the government of one or more countries or by any reorganized confederation or association of such governments.

“Default” means any event that is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Depository” means the clearing agency registered under the Exchange Act that is designated to act as the Depository for global Securities. DTC shall be the initial Depository, until a successor shall have been appointed and become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter, “Depository” shall mean or include such successor.

“Dollar” or “\$” means a dollar or other equivalent unit in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time shall be legal tender for the payment of public and private debts.

“DTC” means The Depository Trust Company.

“Euro” means the euro or other equivalent unit in such official coin or currency of the European Union.

“Election Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(h).

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Article Five.

“Exchange Rate Agent,” with respect to Securities of or within any series, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, a bank that is a member of the New York Clearing House Association, designated pursuant to Section 301 or Section 313.

“Exchange Rate Officer’s Certificate” means a certificate setting forth (i) the applicable Market Exchange Rate or the applicable bid quotation, and (ii) the Dollar or Foreign Currency amounts of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any (on an aggregate basis and on the basis of a Security having the lowest denomination principal amount determined in accordance with Section 302 in the relevant Currency), payable with respect to a Security of any series on the basis of such Market Exchange Rate or the applicable bid quotation signed by the Chief Financial Officer or any Vice President of the Company.

“Foreign Currency” means any Currency, including, without limitation, the Euro issued by the government of one or more countries other than the United States of America or by any recognized confederation or association of such governments.

“Government Obligations” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America or the government that issued the Foreign Currency in which the Securities of a particular series are payable, for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America or such government that issued the Foreign Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, the timely payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America or such other government, which, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; provided; however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest on or principal of the Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“Holder” means the Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 301; provided, however, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of the or those particular series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established as contemplated by Section 301, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms that relate solely to other series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted, and exclusive of any provisions or terms adopted by means of one or more indentures supplemental hereto executed and delivered after such Person had become such Trustee but to which such Person, as such Trustee, was not a party.

“Indexed Security” means a Security as to which all or certain interest payments and/or the principal amount payable at Maturity are determined by reference to prices, changes in prices, or differences between prices, of securities, Currencies, intangibles, goods, articles or commodities or by such other objective price, economic or other measures as are specified in or pursuant to Section 301 hereof.

“Interest,” when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity, and, when used with respect to a Security which provides for the payment of Additional Amounts pursuant to Section 1004, includes such Additional Amounts.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Market Exchange Rate” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, (i) for any conversion involving a currency unit on the one hand and Dollars or any Foreign Currency on the other, the exchange rate between the relevant currency unit and Dollars or such Foreign Currency calculated by the method specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of the relevant series, (ii) for any conversion of Dollars into any Foreign Currency, the noon buying rate for such Foreign Currency for cable transfers quoted in New York City as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and (iii) for any conversion of one Foreign Currency into Dollars or another Foreign Currency, the spot rate at noon local time in the relevant market at which, in accordance with normal banking procedures, the Dollars or Foreign Currency into which conversion is being made could be purchased with the Foreign Currency from which conversion is being made from major banks located in either New York City, London or any other principal market for Dollars or such purchased Foreign Currency, in each case determined by the Exchange Rate Agent. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, in the event of the unavailability of any of the exchange rates provided for in the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the Exchange Rate Agent shall use, in its sole discretion and without liability on its part, such quotation of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as of the most recent available date, or quotations from one or more major banks in New York City, London or other principal market for such currency or currency unit in question, or such other quotations as the Exchange Rate Agent shall deem appropriate. Unless otherwise specified by the Exchange Rate Agent, if there is more than one market for dealing in any currency or currency unit by reason of foreign exchange regulations or otherwise, the market to be used in respect of such currency or currency unit shall be that upon which a nonresident issuer of securities designated in such currency or currency unit would purchase such currency or currency unit in order to make payments in respect of such securities as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent, in its sole discretion.

“Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, notice of redemption, notice of option to elect repayment, notice of exchange or conversion or otherwise.

“Notice of Default” has the meaning provided in Section 501.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the Chief Executive Officer, President or a Vice President of the Company, and by the Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer, Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company or who may be an employee of or other counsel for the Company and who shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means any Security that provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding,” when used with respect to Securities or any series of Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities or all Securities of such series, as the case may be, theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

(i) Securities theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or delivered to the Trustee for cancellation;

(ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for whose payment or redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities, provided, however, that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;

(iii) Securities, except to the extent provided in Section 1402 and Section 1403, with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance and/or covenant defeasance as provided in Article Fourteen;

(iv) Securities that have been changed into any other securities of the Company or any other Person in accordance with this Indenture if the terms of such Securities provide for convertibility or exchangeability pursuant to Section 301; and

(v) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to it that such Securities are held by a protected purchaser in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders for quorum purposes, and for the purpose of making the calculations required by TIA Section 313, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the amount of principal thereof that would be (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable, at the time of such determination, upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, (ii) the principal amount of any Security denominated in a Foreign Currency that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the Dollar equivalent, determined as of the date such Security is originally issued by the Company as set forth in an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustee, of the principal amount (or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security or Indexed Security, the Dollar equivalent as of such date of original issuance of the amount determined as provided in clause (i) above or (iii) below, respectively) of such Security, (iii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 301, and (iv) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in making such calculation or in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver or upon any such determination as to the presence of a quorum, only Securities which a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor.

“Paying Agent” means any Person authorized by the Company to pay the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities on behalf of the Company.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, limited liability company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof, or any other entity.

“Place of Payment,” when used with respect to the Securities of or within any series, means the place or places where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities are payable as specified and as contemplated by Section 301 and Section 1002.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

“Redemption Date,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Redemption Price,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture.

“Registered Security” means any Security that is registered in the Security Register.

“Regular Record Date” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Registered Securities of or within any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 301, whether or not a Business Day.

“Repayment Date,” when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, means the date fixed for such repayment by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Repayment Price,” when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, means the price at which it is to be repaid by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“Responsible Officer,” when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee assigned by the Trustee to administer its corporate trust matters and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

“Security” or “Securities” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and, more particularly, means any Security or Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; provided, however, that, if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“Security Register” and “Security Registrar” have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

“Senior Indebtedness” means the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on (a) indebtedness of the Company (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by the Company), whether outstanding on the date hereof or thereafter created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, that has been designated by the Company as “Senior Indebtedness” for purposes of this Indenture by a Company Order delivered to the Trustee, (b) Senior Securities, and (c) renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any such indebtedness.

“Senior Security” or “Senior Securities” means any Security or Securities designated pursuant to Section 301 as a Senior Security.

“Special Record Date” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of or within any series means a date fixed by the Trustee pursuant to Section 307.

“Stated Maturity,” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable, as such date may be extended pursuant to the provisions of Section 308.

“Subordinated Indebtedness” means the principal of (and premium, if any) and unpaid interest on (a) indebtedness of the Company (including indebtedness of others guaranteed by the Company), whether outstanding on the date hereof or thereafter created, incurred, assumed or guaranteed, for money borrowed, which in the instrument creating or evidencing the same or pursuant to which the same is outstanding it is provided that such indebtedness ranks junior in right of payment to the Company’s Senior Indebtedness, equally and *pari passu* in right of payment with all other Subordinated Indebtedness, (b) Subordinated Securities, and (c) renewals, extensions, modifications and refinancings of any such Subordinated Indebtedness.

“Subordinated Security” or “Subordinated Securities” means any Security or Securities designated pursuant to Section 301 as a Subordinated Security.

“Subsidiary” means (1) any corporation a majority of the outstanding voting stock of which is owned, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries of the Company, (2) any other Person (other than a corporation) in which such Person, one or more Subsidiaries of such Person, or such Person and one or more Subsidiaries of such Person, directly or indirectly, at the date of determination thereof has a majority ownership interest, or (3) a partnership in which such Person or a Subsidiary of such Person is, at the time, a general partner and in which such Person, directly or indirectly, at the date of determination thereof has a majority ownership interest. For the purposes of this definition, “voting stock” means stock having voting power for the election of directors, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of stock has such voting power by reason of any contingency.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was executed, except as provided in Section 905.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“United States” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction.

“United States person” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, any individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States, a corporation, partnership or other entity created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia (other than a partnership that is not treated as a United States person under any applicable Treasury regulations), any estate the income of which is subject to United States federal income taxation regardless of its source, or any trust if a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over the administration of the trust and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, to the extent provided in the Treasury regulations, certain trusts in existence on August 20, 1996, and treated as United States persons prior to such date that elect to continue to be treated as United States persons, will also be United States persons.

“Valuation Date” has the meaning specified in Section 312(c).

“Yield to Maturity” means the yield to maturity, computed at the time of issuance of a Security (or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such Security) and as set forth in such Security in accordance with generally accepted United States bond yield computation principles.

Section 102. Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant provided for in this Indenture (other than pursuant to Section 1005) shall include:

(1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such condition or covenant and the definitions herein relating thereto;

(2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;

(3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he or she has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable such individual to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such condition or covenant has been complied with; and

(4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

Section 103. Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion as to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, or a certificate or representations by counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the opinion, certificate or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such Opinion of Counsel or certificate or representations may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information as to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations as to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 104. Acts of Holders.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of the Outstanding Securities of all series or one or more series, as the case may be, may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agents duly appointed in writing. Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series may, alternatively, be embodied in and evidenced by the record of Holders of Securities of such series voting in favor thereof, either in person or by proxies duly appointed in writing, at any meeting of Holders of Securities of such series duly called and held in accordance with the provisions of Article Fifteen, or a combination of such instruments and any such record. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company and any agent of the Trustee or the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section 104. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in Section 1506.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him or her the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of his authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing or the authority of the Person executing the same may also be proved in any other reasonable manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

(c) The ownership of Registered Securities shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of Registered Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may, at its option, in or pursuant to a Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Such record date shall be the record date specified in or pursuant to such Board Resolution. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on such record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than eleven months after the record date.

(e) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent, any Authenticating Agent or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

Section 105. Notices, Etc., to Trustee and Company.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished, filed or mailed, first-class postage prepaid in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: GSV Capital Corp. ([_____, _____]), or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Company by the Trustee, or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or by any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to it at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this Indenture, to the attention of its Secretary or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

Section 106. Notice to Holders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities by the Company or the Trustee, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each such Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders of Registered Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Registered Securities. Any notice mailed to a Holder in the manner herein prescribed shall be conclusively deemed to have been received by such Holder, whether or not such Holder actually receives such notice.

If by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification to Holders of Registered Securities as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification to such Holders for every purpose hereunder.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

Section 107. Conflict with TIA.

If any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the TIA that is required under the TIA to be a part of and govern this Indenture, the provision of the TIA shall control. If any provision of this Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the TIA that may be so modified or excluded, the provision of the TIA shall be deemed to apply to this Indenture as so modified or only to the extent not so excluded, as the case may be.

Section 108. Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 109. Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 110. Separability Clause.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in any Security shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 111. Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent, any Authenticating Agent and their successors hereunder and the Holders any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 112. Governing Law.

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York without regard to principles of conflicts of laws. This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

Section 113. Legal Holidays.

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security other than a provision in the Securities of any series which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section 113), payment of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date or sinking fund payment date, or at the Stated Maturity or Maturity; provided, however, that no interest shall accrue on the amount so payable for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, Repayment Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be.

Section 114. Submission to Jurisdiction.

The Company hereby irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any New York state or federal court sitting in The City of New York in any action or proceeding arising out of or relating to the Indenture and the Securities of any series, and the Company hereby irrevocably agrees that all claims in respect of such action or proceeding may be heard and determined in such New York state or federal court. The Company hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent it may effectively do so, the defense of an inconvenient forum to the maintenance of such action or proceeding.

**ARTICLE TWO.
SECURITIES FORMS**

Section 201. Forms of Securities.

The Registered Securities of each series, the temporary global Securities of each series, if any, and the permanent global Securities of each series, if any, shall be in substantially the forms as shall be established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or approved from time to time by or pursuant to a Board Resolution in accordance with Section 301, shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as the Company may deem appropriate and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any stock exchange on which the Securities may be listed, or to conform to usage.

The definitive Securities shall be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on a steel engraved border or steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officers executing such Securities, as evidenced by their execution of such Securities.

Section 202. Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.

Subject to Section 611, the Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee

By _____
Authorized Officer

Section 203. Securities Issuable in Global Form.

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified as contemplated by Section 301, then, notwithstanding clause (8) of Section 301 and the provisions of Section 302, any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series represented thereby may from time to time be increased or decreased to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustee or the Security Registrar in such manner and upon instructions given by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustee pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304. Subject to the provisions of Section 303 and, if applicable, Section 304, the Trustee or the Security Registrar shall deliver and redeliver any Security in permanent global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement, delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

The provisions of the last sentence of Section 303 shall apply to any Security represented by a Security in global form if such Security was never issued and sold by the Company and the Company delivers to the Trustee or the Security Registrar the Security in global form together with written instructions (which need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) with regard to the reduction in the principal amount of Securities represented thereby, together with the written statement contemplated by the last sentence of Section 303.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 307, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 309 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company and the Trustee shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a permanent global Security, the Holder of such permanent global Security.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for the Securities evidenced thereby, every global Security authenticated and delivered hereunder shall bear a legend in substantially the following form:

THIS SECURITY IS A GLOBAL SECURITY WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF A DEPOSITORY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS SECURITY MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS SECURITY IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN SUCH DEPOSITORY OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE.

**ARTICLE THREE.
THE SECURITIES**

Section 301. Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series as Registered Securities and shall be designated as Senior Securities or Subordinated Securities. Senior Securities are unsubordinated, shall rank equally and pari passu with all of the Company's other Senior Indebtedness and senior to all of the Company's Subordinated Indebtedness. Subordinated Securities shall rank junior to the Company's Senior Indebtedness and equally and pari passu with all of the Company's other Subordinated Indebtedness. There shall be established in one or more Board Resolutions or pursuant to authority granted by one or more Board Resolutions and, subject to Section 303, set forth, or determined in the manner provided, in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, any or all of the following, as applicable (each of which (except for the matters set forth in clauses (1), (2) and (15) below), if so provided, may be determined from time to time by the Company with respect to unissued Securities of the series when issued from time to time):

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series including CUSIP numbers (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from all other series of Securities);
- (2) any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 304, Section 305, Section 306, Section 906, Section 1107 or Section 1305, and except for any Securities which, pursuant to Section 303, are deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder);
- (3) the date or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the principal of the Securities of the series shall be payable;
- (4) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, if any, or the method by which such rate or rates shall be determined, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on any Registered Security on any Interest Payment Date, or the method by which such date shall be determined, the basis upon which such interest shall be calculated if other than that of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months;

(5) the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, where the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of the series shall be payable, any Registered Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;

(6) the period or periods within which, or the date or dates on which, the price or prices at which, the Currency or Currencies in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company, if the Company is to have the option;

(7) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem, repay or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of a Holder thereof, and the period or periods within which or the date or dates on which, the price or prices at which, the Currency or Currencies in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

(8) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denomination or denominations in which any Registered Securities of the series shall be issuable;

(9) if other than the Trustee, the identity of each Security Registrar and/or Paying Agent;

(10) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, upon redemption of the Securities of the series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity, upon surrender for repayment at the option of the Holder, or which the Trustee shall be entitled to claim pursuant to Section 504 or the method by which such portion shall be determined;

(11) if other than Dollars, the Currency or Currencies in which payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series shall be made or in which the Securities of the series shall be denominated and the particular provisions applicable thereto in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 312;

(12) whether the amount of payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more Currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;

(13) whether the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Securities of the series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in one or more Currencies other than that in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable, the period or periods within which (including the Election Date), and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made, and the time and manner of determining the exchange rate between the Currency or Currencies in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable and the Currency or Currencies in which such Securities are to be paid, in each case in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 312;

(14) provisions, if any, granting special rights to the Holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of such events as may be specified;

(15) any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or covenants (including any deletions from, modifications of or additions to any of the provisions of Section 1006) of the Company with respect to Securities of the series, whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein;

(16) whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable initially in temporary global form and whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable in permanent global form and, if so, whether beneficial owners of interests in any such permanent global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of such series in certificated form and of like tenor of any authorized form and denomination and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner provided in Section 305, and the circumstances under which and the place or places where such exchanges may be made and if Securities of the series are to be issuable as a global Security, the identity of the depository for such series;

(17) the date as of which any temporary global Security representing Outstanding Securities of the series shall be dated if other than the date of original issuance of the first Security of the series to be issued;

(18) the Person to whom any interest on any Registered Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid; and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a permanent global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in Section 307;

(19) the applicability, if any, of Section 1402 and/or Section 1403 to the Securities of the series and any provisions in modification of, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Article Fourteen;

(20) if the Securities of such series are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security of such series) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, then the form and/or terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;

(21) whether, under what circumstances and the Currency in which, the Company will pay Additional Amounts as contemplated by Section 1004 on the Securities of the series to any Holder who is not a United States person (including any modification to the definition of such term) in respect of any tax, assessment or governmental charge and, if so, whether the Company will have the option to redeem such Securities rather than pay such Additional Amounts (and the terms of any such option);

(22) the designation of the initial Exchange Rate Agent, if any;

(23) if the Securities of the series are to be issued upon the exercise of warrants, the time, manner and place for such Securities to be authenticated and delivered;

(24) if the Securities of the series are to be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (including the Company), the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable;

(25) if the Securities of the series are to be secured, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so secured;

(26) the appointment of any calculation agent, foreign currency exchange agent or other additional agents;

(27) if the Securities of the series are to be listed on a securities exchange, the name of such exchange may be indicated; and

(28) any other terms of the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture or the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act).

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to the Board Resolution referred to above (subject to Section 303) and set forth in the Officers' Certificate referred to above or in any such indenture supplemental hereto. All Securities of any one series need not be issued at the same time and, unless otherwise provided, a series may be reopened, without the consent of the Holders, for issuances of additional Securities of such series.

If any of the terms of the Securities of any series are established by action taken pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions, a copy of an appropriate record of such action(s) shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of the Securities of such series.

Section 302. Denominations.

The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 301. With respect to Securities of any series denominated in Dollars, in the absence of any such provisions with respect to the Securities of any series, the Registered Securities of such series, other than Registered Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination) shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 303. Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.

The Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chief Executive Officer, its President, its Chief Operating Officer, its Chief Financial Officer or any of its Vice Presidents and attested by its Secretary or any of its Assistant Secretaries. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such authorized officer and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company, to the Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order and an Officers' Certificate and Opinion of Counsel in accordance with Section 102 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. If all the Securities of any series are not to be issued at one time and if the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series shall so permit, such Company Order may set forth procedures acceptable to the Trustee for the issuance of such Securities and determining the terms of particular Securities of such series, such as interest rate, maturity date, date of issuance and date from which interest shall accrue. In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and shall be fully protected in relying upon,

- (i) an Opinion of Counsel stating,
 - (a) that the form or forms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
 - (b) that the terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture; and
 - (c) that such Securities, when completed by appropriate insertions and executed and delivered by the Company to the Trustee for authentication in accordance with this Indenture, authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in accordance with this Indenture and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization and other similar laws of general applicability relating to or affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights, to general equitable principles and to such other qualifications as such counsel shall conclude do not materially affect the rights of Holders of such Securities; and

(ii) an Officers' Certificate stating, to the best of the knowledge of the signers of such certificate, that no Event of Default with respect to any of the Securities shall have occurred and be continuing.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 301 and of this Section 303, if all the Securities of any series are not to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver an Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 301 or the Company Order, Opinion of Counsel or Officers' Certificate otherwise required pursuant to the preceding paragraph at the time of issuance of each Security of such series, but such order, opinion and certificates, with appropriate modifications to cover such future issuances, shall be delivered at or before the time of issuance of the first Security of such series.

If such form or terms have been so established, the Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties, obligations or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee. Notwithstanding the generality of the foregoing, the Trustee will not be required to authenticate Securities denominated in a Foreign Currency if the Trustee reasonably believes that it would be unable to perform its duties with respect to such Securities.

Each Registered Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein duly executed by the Trustee or an Authenticating Agent by manual signature of an authorized signatory, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustee for cancellation as provided in Section 310 together with a written statement (which need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) stating that such Security has never been issued and sold by the Company, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture.

Section 304. Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities that are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. In the case of Securities of any series, such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form (which shall be exchanged as provided in or pursuant to a Board Resolution), if temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount and like tenor of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

Section 305. Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

The Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee or in any office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment a register for each series of Securities (the registers maintained in such office or in any such office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes referred to collectively as the “Security Register”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of Registered Securities and of transfers of Registered Securities. The Security Register shall be in written form or any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. The Trustee, at its Corporate Trust Office, is hereby initially appointed “Security Registrar” for the purpose of registering Registered Securities and transfers of Registered Securities on such Security Register as herein provided, and for facilitating exchanges of temporary global Securities for permanent global Securities or definitive Securities, or both, or of permanent global Securities for definitive Securities, or both, as herein provided. In the event that the Trustee shall cease to be Security Registrar, it shall have the right to examine the Security Register at all reasonable times. In acting hereunder and in connection with the Securities, the Security Registrar shall act solely as an agent of the Company, and will not thereby assume any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust for or with any Holder.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Registered Security of any series at any office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding and containing identical terms and provisions.

At the option of the Holder, Registered Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination or denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions, upon surrender of the Registered Securities to be exchanged at any such office or agency. Whenever any Registered Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Registered Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, any permanent global Security shall be exchangeable only as provided in this paragraph. If any beneficial owner of an interest in a permanent global Security is entitled to exchange such interest for Securities of such series and of like tenor and principal amount of another authorized form and denomination, as specified as contemplated by Section 301 and provided, however, that any applicable notice provided in the permanent global Security shall have been given, then without unnecessary delay but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interest may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee definitive Securities in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such permanent global Security shall be surrendered by the depository specified as contemplated by Section 301 or such other depository as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, or to the Security Registrar, to be exchanged, in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities of the same series without charge and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such permanent global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such permanent global Security to be exchanged; provided, however, that no such exchanges may occur during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities to be redeemed and ending on the relevant Redemption Date if the Security for which exchange is requested may be among those selected for redemption. If a Registered Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a permanent global Security after the close of business at the office or agency where such exchange occurs on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest or interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Registered Security, but will be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such permanent global Security is payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Registered Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar or any transfer agent) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar, duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney or any transfer agent duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, but the Company or the Trustee may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, Section 906, Section 1107 or Section 1305 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security if such Security may be among those selected for redemption during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before selection of the Securities to be redeemed under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Registered Security so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except, in the case of any Registered Security to be redeemed in part, the portion thereof not to be redeemed or (iii) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security that has been surrendered for repayment at the option of the Holder, except the portion, if any, of such Security not to be so repaid.

The Trustee shall have no responsibility or obligation to any beneficial owner of a global Security, a member of, or a participant in, DTC or other Person with respect to the accuracy of the records of DTC or its nominee or of any participant or member thereof, with respect to any ownership interest in the Securities or with respect to the delivery to any participant, member, beneficial owner or other Person (other than DTC) of any notice (including any notice of redemption or purchase) or the payment of any amount or delivery of any Securities (or other security or property) under or with respect to such Securities. All notices and communications to be given to the Holders and all payments to be made to Holders in respect of the Securities shall be given or made only to or upon the order of the registered Holders (which shall be DTC or its nominee in the case of a global Security). The rights of beneficial owners in any global Security shall be exercised only through DTC subject to the applicable rules and procedures of DTC. The Trustee may rely and shall be fully protected in relying upon information furnished by DTC with respect to its members, participants and any beneficial owners.

The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among DTC participants, members or beneficial owners in any global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by, the terms of this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof. Neither the Trustee nor any of its agents shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by DTC.

Section 306. Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee or the Company, together with, in proper cases, such security or indemnity as may be required by the Company or the Trustee to save each of them or any agent of either of them harmless, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there shall be delivered to the Company and to the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Company shall, subject to the following paragraph, execute and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same series and principal amount, containing identical terms and provisions and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section 306, the Company, the Paying Agent, or the Security Registrar may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee, the Paying Agent, or the Security Registrar) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series issued pursuant to this Section 306 in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of that series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section 306 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 307. Payment of Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset.

(a) Except as otherwise specified with respect to a series of Securities in accordance with the provisions of Section 301, interest, if any, on any Registered Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose pursuant to Section 1002; provided, however, that each installment of interest, if any, on any Registered Security may at the Company's option be paid by (i) mailing a check for such interest, payable to or upon the written order of the Person entitled thereto pursuant to Section 309, to the address of such Person as it appears on the Security Register, or (ii) transfer to an account maintained by the payee located in the United States.

Except as otherwise specified with respect to a series of Securities in accordance with the provisions of Section 301, any interest on any Registered Security of any series that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date (“Defaulted Interest”) shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered Holder thereof on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Registered Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment (which shall not be less than 20 days after such notice is received by the Trustee), and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)) equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of Registered Securities of such series at his address as it appears in the Security Register not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

(b) The provisions of this Section 307(b) may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 301 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 301). The interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) on any Security of such series may be reset by the Company on the date or dates specified on the face of such Security (each an "Optional Reset Date"). The Company may exercise such option with respect to such Security by notifying the Trustee of such exercise at least 45 but not more than 60 days prior to an Optional Reset Date for such Security. Not later than 35 days prior to each Optional Reset Date, the Trustee shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, to the Holder of any such Security a notice (the "Reset Notice") indicating whether the Company has elected to reset the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), and if so (i) such new interest rate (or such new spread or spread multiplier, if applicable), and (ii) the provisions, if any, for redemption during the period from such Optional Reset Date to the next Optional Reset Date or if there is no such next Optional Reset Date, to the Stated Maturity of such Security (each such period a "Subsequent Interest Period"), including the date or dates on which or the period or periods during which and the price or prices at which such redemption may occur during the Subsequent Interest Period.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days prior to the Optional Reset Date, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice and establish a higher interest rate (or a spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable) for the Subsequent Interest Period by causing the Trustee to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, notice of such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) is reset on an Optional Reset Date, and with respect to which the Holders of such Securities have not tendered such Securities for repayment (or have validly revoked any such tender) pursuant to the next succeeding paragraph, will bear such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier providing for a higher interest rate, if applicable).

The Holder of any such Security will have the option to elect repayment by the Company of the principal of such Security on each Optional Reset Date at a price equal to the principal amount thereof plus interest accrued to such Optional Reset Date. In order to obtain repayment on an Optional Reset Date, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustee shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to such Optional Reset Date and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to the Reset Notice, the Holder may, by written notice to the Trustee, revoke such tender or repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before such Optional Reset Date.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section 307 and Section 305, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

Section 308. Optional Extension of Maturity.

The provisions of this Section 308 may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 301 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 301). The Stated Maturity of any Security of such series may be extended at the option of the Company for the period or periods specified on the face of such Security (each an "Extension Period") up to but not beyond the date (the "Final Maturity") set forth on the face of such Security. The Company may exercise such option with respect to any Security by notifying the Trustee of such exercise at least 45 but not more than 60 days prior to the Stated Maturity of such Security in effect prior to the exercise of such option (the "Original Stated Maturity"). If the Company exercises such option, the Trustee shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, to the Holder of such Security not later than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity a notice (the "Extension Notice"), prepared by the Company, indicating (i) the election of the Company to extend the Stated Maturity, (ii) the new Stated Maturity, (iii) the interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), if any, applicable to the Extension Period, and (iv) the provisions, if any, for redemption during such Extension Period. Upon the Trustee's transmittal of the Extension Notice, the Stated Maturity of such Security shall be extended automatically and, except as modified by the Extension Notice and as described in the next paragraph, such Security will have the same terms as prior to the transmittal of such Extension Notice.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days before the Original Stated Maturity of such Security, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Extension Notice and establish a higher interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such higher interest rate, if applicable) for the Extension Period by causing the Trustee to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 106, notice of such higher interest rate (or spread, spread multiplier or other formula to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the Stated Maturity is extended will bear such higher interest rate.

If the Company extends the Stated Maturity of any Security, the Holder will have the option to elect repayment of such Security by the Company on the Original Stated Maturity at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus interest accrued to such date. In order to obtain repayment on the Original Stated Maturity once the Company has extended the Stated Maturity thereof, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders, except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustee shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to an Extension Notice, the Holder may by written notice to the Trustee revoke such tender for repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before the Original Stated Maturity.

Section 309. Persons Deemed Owners.

Prior to due presentment of a Registered Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall treat the Person in whose name such Registered Security is registered as the owner of such Registered Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 305 and Section 307) interest, if any, on such Registered Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Registered Security be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee nor any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

None of the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Security in global form or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any global temporary or permanent Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, or any agent of the Company or the Trustee, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any depository, as a Holder, with respect to such global Security or impair, as between such depository and owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such depository (or its nominee) as Holder of such global Security.

Section 310. Cancellation.

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, repayment at the option of the Holder, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee, and any such Securities surrendered directly to the Trustee for any such purpose shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to the Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to the Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by the Trustee. If the Company shall so acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are surrendered to the Trustee for cancellation. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section 310, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. Cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be destroyed by the Trustee in accordance with its customary procedures, unless by a Company Order the Company directs the Trustee to deliver a certificate of such destruction to the Company or to return them to the Company.

Section 311. Computation of Interest.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 with respect to Securities of any series, interest, if any, on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months.

Section 312. Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities.

(a) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, with respect to Registered Securities of any series not permitting the election provided for in paragraph (b) below or the Holders of which have not made the election provided for in paragraph (b) below, payment of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on any Registered Security of such series will be made in the Currency in which such Registered Security is payable. The provisions of this Section 312 may be modified or superseded with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301.

(b) It may be provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to Registered Securities of any series that Holders shall have the option, subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) below, to receive payments of principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest, if any, on such Registered Securities in any of the Currencies which may be designated for such election by delivering to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities a written election with signature guarantees and in the applicable form established pursuant to Section 301, not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the applicable payment date. If a Holder so elects to receive such payments in any such Currency, such election will remain in effect for such Holder or any transferee of such Holder until changed by such Holder or such transferee by written notice to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities (but any such change must be made not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the next payment date to be effective for the payment to be made on such payment date and no such change of election may be made with respect to payments to be made on any Registered Security of such series with respect to which an Event of Default has occurred or with respect to which the Company has deposited funds pursuant to Article Four or Article Fourteen or with respect to which a notice of redemption has been given by the Company or a notice of option to elect repayment has been sent by such Holder or such transferee). Any Holder of any such Registered Security who shall not have delivered any such election to the Trustee of such series of Registered Securities not later than the close of business on the applicable Election Date will be paid the amount due on the applicable payment date in the relevant Currency as provided in Section 312(a). The Trustee for each such series of Registered Securities shall notify the Exchange Rate Agent as soon as practicable after the Election Date of the aggregate principal amount of Registered Securities for which Holders have made such written election.

(c) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 301, then, not later than the fourth Business Day after the Election Date for each payment date for Registered Securities of any series, the Exchange Rate Agent will deliver to the Company a written notice specifying the Currency in which Registered Securities of such series are payable, the respective aggregate amounts of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Registered Securities to be paid on such payment date, specifying the amounts in such Currency so payable in respect of the Registered Securities as to which the Holders of Registered Securities denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above. Unless the Trustee is acting as the Exchange Rate Agent, the Trustee shall have no obligation to complete the actual exchange of distribution amounts from one Currency to another Currency. If the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 301 and if at least one Holder has made such election, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, on the second Business Day preceding such payment date the Company will deliver to the Trustee for such series of Registered Securities an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate in respect of the Dollar or Foreign Currency or Currencies payments to be made on such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, the Dollar or Foreign Currency or Currencies amount receivable by Holders of Registered Securities who have elected payment in a Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above shall be determined by the Company on the basis of the applicable Market Exchange Rate in effect on the second Business Day (the "Valuation Date") immediately preceding each payment date, and such determination shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes, absent manifest error.

(d) If a Conversion Event occurs with respect to a Foreign Currency in which any of the Securities are denominated or payable other than pursuant to an election provided for pursuant to paragraph (b) above, then with respect to each date for the payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the applicable Securities denominated or payable in such Foreign Currency occurring after the last date on which such Foreign Currency was used (the “Conversion Date”), the Dollar shall be the currency of payment for use on each such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, the Dollar amount to be paid by the Company to the Trustee of each such series of Securities and by such Trustee or any Paying Agent to the Holders of such Securities with respect to such payment date shall be, in the case of a Foreign Currency other than a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency or, in the case of a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, in each case as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent in the manner provided in paragraph (f) or (g) below.

(e) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if the Holder of a Registered Security denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above, and a Conversion Event occurs with respect to such elected Currency, such Holder shall receive payment in the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election; and if a Conversion Event occurs with respect to the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election, such Holder shall receive payment in Dollars as provided in paragraph (d) of this Section 312.

(f) The “Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and shall be obtained for each subsequent payment date by converting the specified Foreign Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate on the Conversion Date.

(g) The “Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and subject to the provisions of paragraph (h) below shall be the sum of each amount obtained by converting the Specified Amount of each Component Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate for such Component Currency on the Valuation Date with respect to each payment.

(h) For purposes of this Section 312, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

A “Component Currency” shall mean any currency which, on the Conversion Date, was a component currency of the relevant currency unit.

A “Specified Amount” of a Component Currency shall mean the number of units of such Component Currency or fractions thereof which were represented in the relevant currency unit on the Conversion Date. If after the Conversion Date the official unit of any Component Currency is altered by way of combination or subdivision, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be divided or multiplied in the same proportion. If after the Conversion Date two or more Component Currencies are consolidated into a single currency, the respective Specified Amounts of such Component Currencies shall be replaced by an amount in such single currency equal to the sum of the respective Specified Amounts of such consolidated Component Currencies expressed in such single currency, and such amount shall thereafter be a Specified Amount and such single currency shall thereafter be a Component Currency. If after the Conversion Date any Component Currency shall be divided into two or more currencies, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be replaced by amounts of such two or more currencies, having an aggregate Dollar Equivalent value at the Market Exchange Rate on the date of such replacement equal to the Dollar Equivalent of the Specified Amount of such former Component Currency at the Market Exchange Rate immediately before such division, and such amounts shall thereafter be Specified Amounts and such currencies shall thereafter be Component Currencies. If, after the Conversion Date of the relevant currency unit, a Conversion Event (other than any event referred to above in this definition of “Specified Amount”) occurs with respect to any Component Currency of such currency unit and is continuing on the applicable Valuation Date, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall, for purposes of calculating the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, be converted into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate in effect on the Conversion Date of such Component Currency.

An “Election Date” shall mean the Regular Record Date for the applicable series of Registered Securities or at least 16 days prior to Maturity, as the case may be, or such other prior date for any series of Registered Securities as specified pursuant to clause 13 of Section 301 by which the written election referred to in Section 312(b) may be made.

All decisions and determinations of the Exchange Rate Agent regarding the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, the Market Exchange Rate and changes in the Specified Amounts as specified above shall be in its sole discretion and shall, in the absence of manifest error, be conclusive for all purposes and irrevocably binding upon the Company, the Trustee for the appropriate series of Securities and all Holders of such Securities denominated or payable in the relevant Currency. The Exchange Rate Agent shall promptly give written notice to the Company and the Trustee for the appropriate series of Securities of any such decision or determination.

In the event that the Company determines in good faith that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to a Foreign Currency, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and such Trustee will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided in Section 106 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date. In the event the Company so determines that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to any other currency unit in which Securities are denominated or payable, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and such Trustee will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided in Section 106 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date and the Specified Amount of each Component Currency on the Conversion Date. In the event the Company determines in good faith that any subsequent change in any Component Currency as set forth in the definition of Specified Amount above has occurred, the Company will similarly give written notice to the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities and to the Exchange Rate Agent.

The Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities shall be fully justified and protected in relying and acting upon information received by it from the Company and the Exchange Rate Agent and shall not otherwise have any duty or obligation to determine the accuracy or validity of such information independent of the Company or the Exchange Rate Agent.

Section 313. Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent.

(a) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Foreign Currency, or (ii) may be payable in a Foreign Currency, or so long as it is required under any other provision of this Indenture, then the Company will engage and maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent. The Company will cause the Exchange Rate Agent to make the necessary foreign exchange determinations at the time and in the manner specified pursuant to Section 301 for the purpose of determining the applicable rate of exchange and, if applicable, for the purpose of converting the issued Foreign Currency into the applicable payment Currency for the payment of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, pursuant to Section 312.

(b) No resignation of the Exchange Rate Agent and no appointment of a successor Exchange Rate Agent pursuant to this Section 313 shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Exchange Rate Agent as evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Company and the Trustee of the appropriate series of Securities accepting such appointment executed by the successor Exchange Rate Agent.

(c) If the Exchange Rate Agent shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Exchange Rate Agent for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Exchange Rate Agent or Exchange Rate Agents with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Exchange Rate Agent may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301, at any time there shall only be one Exchange Rate Agent with respect to the Securities of any particular series that are originally issued by the Company on the same date and that are initially denominated and/or payable in the same Currency).

Section 314. CUSIP Numbers.

The Company in issuing the Securities may use “CUSIP” numbers (if then generally in use), and, if so, the Trustee shall indicate the respective “CUSIP” numbers of the Securities in notices of redemption as a convenience to Holders; provided, however, that any such notice may state that no representation is made as to the correctness of such numbers either as printed on the Securities or as contained in any notice of redemption and that reliance may be placed only on the other identification numbers printed on the Securities, and any such redemption shall not be affected by any defect in or omission of such numbers. The Company shall advise the Trustee as promptly as practicable in writing of any change in the CUSIP numbers.

ARTICLE FOUR.
SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

Section 401. Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

Except as set forth below, this Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities specified in such Company Request (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or pursuant hereto, any surviving rights of tender for repayment at the option of the Holders and any right to receive Additional Amounts, as provided in Section 1004), and the Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order, and at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series when

(1) either:

(A) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306, and (ii) Securities of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust with the Trustee or any Paying Agent or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or

(B) all Securities of such series:

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) immediately above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose, solely for the benefit of the Holders, an amount in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has irrevocably paid or caused to be irrevocably paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

(3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee under Section 606, the obligations of the Company to any Authenticating Agent under Section 612 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (B) of clause (1) of this Section 401, the obligations of the Trustee under Section 402 and the last paragraph of Section 1003 shall survive any termination of this Indenture.

Section 402. Application of Trust Funds.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, for whose payment such money has been deposited with or received by the Trustee, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. In acting under this Indenture and in connection with the Securities, the Paying Agent shall act solely as an agent of the Company, and will not thereby assume any obligations towards or relationship of agency or trust for or with any Holder.

**ARTICLE FIVE.
REMEDIES**

Section 501. Events of Default.

"Event of Default", wherever used herein with respect to any particular series of Securities, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether or not it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless it is either inapplicable to a particular series or is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the supplemental indenture or a Board Resolution establishing such series of Securities or is in the form of Security for such series:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest upon any Security of that series when such interest becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of that series when it becomes due and payable at its Maturity, and continuance of such default for a period of five days; or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment, when and as due by the terms of any Security of that series, and continuance of such default for a period of five days; or

(4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or agreement of the Company in this Indenture with respect to any Security of that series (other than a covenant or agreement a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section 501 specifically dealt with or which has expressly been included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of a series of Securities other than that series), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder;

(5) the Company, pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law:

(A) commences a voluntary case or proceeding under any Bankruptcy Law,

(B) consents to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it, or files a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief against it,

(C) consents to the entry of a decree or order for relief against it in an involuntary case or proceeding,

(D) consents to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a Custodian of the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or

(E) makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or admits in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due or takes any corporate action in furtherance of any such action; or

(6) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order or decree under any Bankruptcy Law that:

(A) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding, or

(B) adjudges the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approves as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company, or

(C) appoints a Custodian of the Company or for all or substantially all of its property, or

(D) orders the winding up or liquidation of the Company,

and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief or any such other decree or order unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or

(7) if, pursuant to Sections 18(a)(1)(c)(ii) and 61 of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, on the last business day of each of twenty-four consecutive calendar months Securities of that series shall have an asset coverage (as such term is used in the Investment Company Act of 1940) of less than 100 per centum, giving effect to any exemptive relief granted to the Company by the Commission;

- (8) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

The term “Bankruptcy Law” means title 11, U.S. Code or any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law. The term “Custodian” means any custodian, receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

Section 502. Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then and in every such case the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series may (and the Trustee shall at the request of such Holders) declare the principal (or, if any Securities are Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal as may be specified in the terms thereof) of all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by the Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal or specified portion thereof shall become immediately due and payable.

Any application by the Trustee for written instructions from the requisite amount of Holders (as determined pursuant to this Indenture) may, at the option of the Trustee, set forth in writing any action proposed to be taken or omitted by the Trustee under this Indenture and the date on and/or after which such action shall be taken or such omission shall be effective. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken by, or omission of, the Trustee in accordance with a proposal included in such application on or after the date specified in such application unless prior to taking any such action (or the effective date in the case of an omission), the Trustee shall have received written instructions from the requisite amount of Holders (as determined pursuant to this Indenture) in response to such application specifying the action to be taken or omitted.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter provided in this Article Five, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)):

- (A) all overdue installments of interest, if any, on all Outstanding Securities of that series,

(B) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) all Outstanding Securities of that series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and interest thereon at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities,

(C) to the extent that payment of such interest is lawful, interest upon overdue installments of interest at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities, and

(D) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series, other than the nonpayment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series that have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 503. Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

The Company covenants that if:

(1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security of any series when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security of any series at its Maturity,

then the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of Securities of such series, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, with interest upon any overdue principal (and premium, if any) and, to the extent that payment of such interest shall be legally enforceable, upon any overdue installments of interest, if any, at the rate or rates borne by or provided for in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee and its agents and counsel, the Paying Agent, and the Security Registrar.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon Securities of such series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities of such series, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 504. Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities of any series shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of any overdue principal, premium or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise:

(i) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal (or in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal as may be provided for in the terms thereof) (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents, and take such other actions, including serving on a committee of creditors, as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

(ii) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator (or other similar official) in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee, their agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee under Section 606.

Subject to Article Eight and Section 902 and unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 301, nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder of a Security any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder of a Security in any such proceeding.

Section 505. Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or any of the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

The Trustee shall be entitled to participate, in its capacity as Trustee, on behalf of (and at the request of) the Holders, as a member of any official committee of creditors in the matters it deems advisable.

Section 506. Application of Money Collected.

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article Five shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee under Section 606 and any other agent hereunder;

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, giving effect to Article Sixteen, if applicable, but otherwise ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the aggregate amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, respectively; and

THIRD: To the payment of the remainder, if any, to the Company or any other Person or Persons entitled thereto.

Section 507. Limitation on Suits.

No Holder of any Security of any series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity, security, or both, reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;

(4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity and/or security has failed to institute any such proceeding; and

(5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all such Holders.

Section 508. Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right which is absolute and unconditional to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and (subject to Section 305 and Section 307) interest, if any, on such Security on the Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date or, in the case of repayment at the option of the Holders on the Repayment Date) and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 509. Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Holder of a Security has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case the Company, the Trustee and the Holders of Securities shall, subject to any determination in such proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 510. Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 306, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders of Securities is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 511. Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Security to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article Five or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders of Securities, as the case may be.

Section 512. Control by Holders of Securities.

Subject to Section 602, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series, provided, however, that:

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture;
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee that is not inconsistent with such direction;
- (3) the Trustee need not take any action that might involve it in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders of Securities of such series not consenting; and
- (4) prior to taking any such action hereunder, the Trustee may demand security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it in accordance with Section 602.

Section 513. Waiver of Past Defaults.

Subject to Section 502, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past default hereunder with respect to Securities of such series and its consequences, except a default:

- (1) in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of such series, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

Section 514. Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, that may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

**ARTICLE SIX.
THE TRUSTEE**

Section 601. Notice of Defaults.

Within 90 days after the occurrence of any Default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any series, the Trustee shall transmit in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), notice of such Default hereunder known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, unless such Default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a Default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of such series, or in the payment of any sinking or purchase fund installment with respect to the Securities of such series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determines that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Holders of the Securities of such series; and provided further that in the case of any Default or breach of the character specified in clause 4 of Section 501 with respect to the Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 60 days after the occurrence thereof.

Section 602. Certain Rights and Duties of Trustee.

(1) Prior to the time when the occurrence of an Event of Default becomes known to a Responsible Officer of the Trustee and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to a series of Securities that may have occurred:

(a) the duties and obligations of the Trustee hereunder and with respect to the Securities of any series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, including, without limitation, Section 107, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, including, without limitation, Section 107, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(b) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform on their face to the requirements of this Indenture (but need not confirm or investigate the accuracy of any mathematical calculations or other facts stated herein).

(2) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and use the same degree of care and skill in its exercise as a prudent Person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(3) The Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts.

(4) The Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be fully protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties.

(5) Any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order (other than delivery of any Security, to the Trustee for authentication and delivery pursuant to Section 303 which shall be sufficiently evidenced as provided therein) and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution.

(6) Whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may require and, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon a Board Resolution, an Opinion of Counsel or an Officers' Certificate.

(7) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon.

(8) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any series pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities (including the reasonable fees and expenses of its agents and counsel) which might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction.

(9) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, coupon or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled upon reasonable notice and at reasonable times during normal business hours to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney.

(10) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

(11) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Default or Event of Default unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof or unless written notice of any event which is in fact such a default is received by the Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and such notice references the Securities and this Indenture.

(12) The rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and to each agent, custodian and other Person retained to act hereunder.

(13) The permissive rights of the Trustee enumerated herein shall not be construed as duties and the Trustee shall not be answerable for other than its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct with respect to such permissive rights.

(14) The Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to such Securities.

(15) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture.

(16) The Trustee may request that the Company deliver an Officers' Certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture, which Officers' Certificate may be signed by any person authorized to sign an Officers' Certificate, including any person specified as so authorized in any such certificate previously delivered and not superseded.

(17) Anything in this Indenture notwithstanding, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action.

(18) The Trustee shall not be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations under this Indenture arising out of or caused, directly or indirectly, by circumstances beyond its reasonable control, including, without limitation, acts of God; earthquakes; fire; flood; terrorism; wars and other military disturbances; sabotage; epidemics; riots; interruptions; loss or malfunctions of utilities, computer (hardware or software) or communications services; accidents; labor disputes; acts of civil or military authorities and governmental action.

Every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct of, or affecting the liability of, or affording protection to, the Trustee shall be subject to the relevant provisions of this Section 602 and the TIA.

The Trustee shall not be required to expend or risk its own funds, give any bond or surety in respect of the performance of its powers and duties hereunder, or otherwise incur any financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if it shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured to it.

The parties hereto acknowledge that in order to help the United States government fight the funding of terrorism and money laundering activities, pursuant to Federal regulations that became effective on October 1, 2003 (Section 326 of the USA PATRIOT Act) all financial institutions are required to obtain, verify, record and update information that identifies each person establishing a relationship or opening an account. The parties to this Indenture agree that they will provide to the Trustee such information as it may request, from time to time, in order for the Trustee to satisfy the requirements of the USA PATRIOT Act, including, but not limited to, the name, address, tax identification number and other information that will allow it to identify the individual or entity who is establishing the relationship or opening the account and may also ask for formation documents such as articles of incorporation or other identifying documents to be provided.

Section 603. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificate of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities, except that the Trustee represents that it is duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform its obligations hereunder and that the statements made by it in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof.

Section 604. May Hold Securities.

The Trustee, any Paying Agent, Security Registrar, Authenticating Agent or any other agent of the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to TIA Sections 310(b) and 311, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, Paying Agent, Security Registrar, Authenticating Agent or such other agent.

Section 605. Money Held in Trust.

Money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

Section 606. Compensation and Reimbursement and Indemnification of Trustee.

The Company agrees:

- (1) To pay to the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee from time to time such compensation for all services rendered by it hereunder as has been agreed upon from time to time in writing (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust).
- (2) Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse each of the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents, counsel, accountants and experts), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to its negligence or willful misconduct.
- (3) To indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee and their respective officers, directors, employees, representatives and agents, for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or willful misconduct on its own part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the costs and expenses (including reasonable fees and expenses of its agents and counsel) of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its powers or duties hereunder (whether asserted by any Holder, the Company or otherwise). The Trustee shall notify the Company promptly of any third-party claim for which it may seek indemnity of which it has received written notice. Failure by the Trustee to so notify the Company shall not relieve the Company of its obligations hereunder unless, and solely to the extent that, such failure materially prejudices the Company's defense of such claim. The Company shall defend the claim, with counsel reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall provide reasonable cooperation at the Company's expense in the defense; provided, however, that if the defendants in any such claim include both the Company and the Trustee and the Trustee shall have concluded that there may be legal defenses available to it which are different from or additional to those available to the Company, or the Trustee has concluded that there may be any other actual or potential conflicting interests between the Company and the Trustee, the Trustee shall have the right to select separate counsel and the Company shall be required to pay the reasonable fees and expenses of such separate counsel. Any settlement which affects the Trustee may not be entered into without the written consent of the Trustee, unless the Trustee is given a full and unconditional release from liability with respect to the claims covered thereby and such settlement does not include a statement or admission of fault, culpability or failure to act by or on behalf of the Trustee. Any settlement by the Trustee which affects the Company may not be entered into without the written consent of the Company, unless such settlement does not include a statement or admission of fault, culpability or failure to act by or on behalf of the Company.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section 606, the Trustee shall have a claim prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on particular Securities.

When the Trustee incurs expenses or renders services after an Event of Default specified in Section 501 occurs, the expenses and compensation for such services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar Federal, State or analogous foreign law for the relief of debtors.

The provisions of this Section 606 shall survive the resignation or removal of the Trustee and the satisfaction, termination or discharge of this Indenture.

Section 607. Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder that shall be eligible to act as Trustee under TIA Section 310(a)(1) and shall have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of Federal, State, Territorial or the District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section 607, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 607, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article Six.

Section 608. Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire a conflicting interest within the meaning of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall either eliminate such interest or resign, to the extent and in the manner provided by, and subject to the provisions of, the Trust Indenture Act and this Indenture.

Section 609. Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

(a) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article Six shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 610. All outstanding fees, expenses and indemnities of the Trustee shall be satisfied by the Company upon resignation or removal.

(b) The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company.

(c) The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by (i) the Company, by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee, provided, however, that contemporaneously therewith (x) the Company immediately appoints a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series meeting the requirements of Section 607, and (y) the terms of Section 610 are complied with in respect of such appointment (the Trustee being removed hereby agreeing to execute the instrument contemplated by Section 610(b), if applicable, under such circumstances) and provided further that no Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and then be continuing at such time, or (ii) Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Trustee and to the Company.

(d) If at any time:

(1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b) after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 607 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or

(3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company by or pursuant to a Board Resolution may remove the Trustee and appoint a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (ii) subject to TIA Section 315(e), any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

(e) If an instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of a notice of resignation or the delivery of an Act of removal, the Trustee resigning or being removed may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

(f) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series). If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to Securities of such series.

(g) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series in the manner provided for notices to the Holders of Securities in Section 106. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

Section 610. Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.

(a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee, and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 606.

(b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and that (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates. Whenever there is a successor Trustee with respect to one or more (but less than all) series of securities issued pursuant to this Indenture, the terms "Indenture" and "Securities" shall have the meanings specified in the provisos to the respective definition of those terms in Section 101 which contemplate such situation.

(c) Upon request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section 610, as the case may be.

(d) No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article Six.

Section 611. Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided, however, that such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article Six, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any such successor Trustee may authenticate and deliver such Securities, in either its own name or that of its predecessor Trustee, with the full force and effect which this Indenture provides for the certificate of authentication of the Trustee; provided, however, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

Section 612. Appointment of Authenticating Agent.

At any time when any of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Trustee may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents (which may be an Affiliate or Affiliates of the Company) with respect to one or more series of Securities that shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon original issue or upon exchange, registration of transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee, a copy of which instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and, except as may otherwise be provided pursuant to Section 301, shall at all times be a bank or trust company or corporation organized and doing business and in good standing under the laws of the United States of America or of any State or the District of Columbia, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, eligible to serve as trustee hereunder pursuant to Section 607. If such Authenticating Agent publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section 612, the combined capital and surplus of such Authenticating Agent shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. In case at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 612, such Authenticating Agent shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section 612.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, provided, however, that such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section 612, without the execution or filing of any paper or further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent for any series of Securities may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee for such series and to the Company. The Trustee for any series of Securities may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 612, the Trustee for such series may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall promptly give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve in the manner set forth in Section 106. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent herein. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section 612.

The Company agrees to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation including reimbursement of its reasonable expenses for its services under this Section 612.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section 612, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to or in lieu of the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication substantially in the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee

By: _____
as Authenticating Agent

By: _____
Authorized Officer

If all of the Securities of a series may not be originally issued at one time, and the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company wishes to have Securities of such series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested by the Company in writing (which writing need not comply with Section 102 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), shall appoint in accordance with this Section 612 an Authenticating Agent (which, if so requested by the Company, shall be an Affiliate of the Company) having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such series of Securities, provided, however, that the terms and conditions of such appointment are acceptable to the Trustee.

ARTICLE SEVEN.
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 701. Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee:

(a) Semi-annually, not later than March 15 and September 15 in each year, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities of each series as of the preceding March 1 or September 1, as the case may be; and

(b) At such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within thirty (30) calendar days after receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than fifteen (15) calendar days prior to the time such list is furnished; *Excluding* from any such list names and addresses received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar.

Section 702. Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 701 and the names and addresses of Holders received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 701 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b) The rights of Holders to communicate with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities, and the corresponding rights and duties of the Trustee, shall be as provided by the Trust Indenture Act.

(c) Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent nor any Paying Agent nor any Security Registrar nor any agent of any of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with TIA Section 312, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under TIA Section 312(b).

Section 703. Reports by Trustee.

Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first May 15 after the first issuance of Securities pursuant to this Indenture, the Trustee shall transmit by mail (at the expense of the Company) to all Holders of Securities in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c) a brief report dated as of such May 15 which meets the requirements of TIA Section 313(a).

A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to such Holders, be filed by the Trustee with each stock exchange, if any, upon which the Securities are listed, with the Commission and with the Company. The Company will promptly notify the Trustee of the listing of the Securities on any stock exchange. In the event that, on any such reporting date, no events have occurred under the applicable sections of the TIA within the 12 months preceding such reporting date, the Trustee shall be under no duty or obligation to provide such reports.

Section 704. Reports by Company.

The Company will:

(1) file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company is required to file the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents, and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) which the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such Sections, then it will file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports which may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations; and

(2) file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company with the conditions and covenants of this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations.

Delivery of such reports, information, and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to conclusively rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary set forth herein, for the purposes of this Section 704, any information, documents or reports filed electronically with the Commission and made publicly available shall be deemed filed with and delivered to the Trustee at the same time as filed with the Commission.

The Trustee shall transmit by mail to the Holders of Securities (at the expense of the Company), within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to subparagraphs (1) and (2) of this Section 704 as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission. In no event shall the Trustee be obligated to determine whether or not any report, information or document shall have been filed with the Commission.

Section 705. Calculation of Original Issue Discount.

The Company shall file with the Trustee promptly at the end of each calendar year a written notice specifying the amount of original issue discount (including daily rates and accrual periods), if any, accrued on Outstanding Securities as of the end of such year.

ARTICLE EIGHT.
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE OR TRANSFER

Section 801. Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.

The Company shall not consolidate with or merge with or into any other entity or convey or transfer all or substantially all of its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

- (1) either the Company shall be the continuing entity, or the entity (if other than the Company) formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the Person which acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on all the Securities and the performance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;
- (2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (3) the Company and the successor Person have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel each stating that such consolidation, merger, conveyance or transfer and such supplemental indenture comply with this Article Eight and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 802. Successor Person Substituted.

Upon any consolidation or merger, or any conveyance or transfer of the properties and assets of the Company substantially as an entirety in accordance with Section 801, the successor entity formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or the successor Person to which such conveyance or transfer is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor had been named as the Company herein; and in the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company shall be discharged from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and may be dissolved and liquidated.

ARTICLE NINE.
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 901. Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders.

Without the consent of any Holders of Securities, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company herein and in the Securities contained; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or
- (3) to add any additional Events of Default for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities (and if such Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series); provided, however, that in respect of any such additional Events of Default such supplemental indenture may provide for a particular period of grace after default (which period may be shorter or longer than that allowed in the case of other defaults) or may provide for an immediate enforcement upon such default or may limit the remedies available to the Trustee upon such default or may limit the right of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of that or those series of Securities to which such additional Events of Default apply to waive such default; or
- (4) to change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture; provided, however, that any such change or elimination shall become effective only when there is no Security Outstanding of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture that is entitled to the benefit of such provision; or
- (5) to secure the Securities; or
- (6) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Section 201 and Section 301, including the provisions and procedures relating to Securities convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any Person (including the Company); or
- (7) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee; or
- (8) to cure any ambiguity, to correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein, or to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture; provided, however, that such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series in any material respect; or
- (9) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance and discharge of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 401, Section 1402 and Section 1403; provided, however, that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of such series or any other series of Securities in any material respect.

Section 902. Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture that affects such series of Securities or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of such series of Securities under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby:

- (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of (or premium, if any) or any installment of principal of or interest on, any Security, subject to the provisions of Section 308; or the terms of any sinking fund with respect to any Security; or reduce the principal amount thereof or the rate of interest (or change the manner of calculating the rate of interest, thereon, or any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, or change any obligation of the Company to pay Additional Amounts pursuant to Section 1004 (except as contemplated by Section 801(1)) and permitted by Section 901(1)), or reduce the portion of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security or Indexed Security that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502, or upon the redemption thereof or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 504, or adversely affect any right of repayment at the option of the Holder of any Security, or change any Place of Payment where, or the Currency in which, any Security or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, on or after the Redemption Date or the Repayment Date, as the case may be), or adversely affect any right to convert or exchange any Security as may be provided pursuant to Section 301, or modify the subordination provisions set forth in Article Sixteen in a manner that is adverse to the Holder of any Outstanding Security, or
- (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver with respect to such series (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of Section 1504 for quorum or voting, or
- (3) modify any of the provisions of this Section 902, Section 513 or Section 1006, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby; provided, however, that this clause shall not be deemed to require the consent of any Holder of a Security with respect to changes in the references to the "Trustee" and concomitant changes in this Section 902, or the deletion of this proviso, in accordance with the requirements of Section 610(b) and Section 901(8).

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this Section 902 to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

A supplemental indenture that changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or that modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

The Company may, but shall not be obligated to, fix a record date for the purpose of determining the Persons entitled to consent to any indenture supplemental hereto. If a record date is fixed, the Holders on such record date, or their duly designated proxies, and only such Persons, shall be entitled to consent to such supplemental indenture, whether or not such Holders remain Holders after such record date; provided, however, that unless such consent shall have become effective by virtue of the requisite percentage having been obtained prior to the date that is 90 days after such record date, any such consent previously given shall automatically and without further action by any Holder be cancelled and of no further effect.

Section 903. Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article Nine or the modification thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and shall be fully protected in relying upon, in addition to the documents required by Section 102 of this Indenture, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Section 904. Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article Nine, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

Section 905. Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article Nine shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect.

Section 906. Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article Nine may, and shall, if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such series.

**ARTICLE TEN.
COVENANTS**

Section 1001. Payment of Principal, Premium, if any, and Interest.

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each series of Securities that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of such series of Securities and this Indenture. Unless otherwise specified with respect to Securities of any series pursuant to Section 301, at the option of the Company, all payments of principal may be paid by check to the registered Holder of the Registered Security or other person entitled thereto against surrender of such Security.

Section 1002. Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Company shall maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of each such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency in respect of any series of Securities or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as its agent to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all of such purposes, and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in accordance with the requirements set forth above for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby designates as a Place of Payment for each series of Securities the office or agency of the Company in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, and initially appoints the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 301, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a currency other than Dollars, or (ii) may be payable in a currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of the Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent.

Section 1003. Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of any Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)), sufficient to pay the principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on Securities of such series so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum (in the Currency or Currencies described in the preceding paragraph) sufficient to pay the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, so becoming due, such sum of money to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums of money held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as otherwise provided in the Securities of any series, any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of any series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company upon Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such money held in trust, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

Section 1004. Additional Amounts.

If the Securities of a series provide for the payment of Additional Amounts, the Company will pay to the Holder of any Security of such series such Additional Amounts as may be specified as contemplated by Section 301. Whenever in this Indenture there is mentioned, in any context, the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Security of any series or the net proceeds received on the sale or exchange of any Security of any series, such mention shall be deemed to include mention of the payment of Additional Amounts provided for by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301 to the extent that, in such context, Additional Amounts are, were or would be payable in respect thereof pursuant to such terms and express mention of the payment of Additional Amounts (if applicable) in any provisions hereof shall not be construed as excluding Additional Amounts in those provisions hereof where such express mention is not made.

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, if the Securities of a series provide for the payment of Additional Amounts, at least 10 days prior to the first Interest Payment Date with respect to that series of Securities (or if the Securities of that series will not bear interest prior to Maturity, the first day on which a payment of principal premium is made), and at least 10 days prior to each date of payment of principal, premium or interest if there has been any change with respect to the matters set forth in the below-mentioned Officers' Certificate, the Company will furnish the Trustee and the Company's principal Paying Agent or Paying Agents, if other than the Trustee, with an Officers' Certificate instructing the Trustee and such Paying Agent or Paying Agents whether such payment of principal, premium or interest on the Securities of that series shall be made to Holders of Securities of that series who are not United States persons without withholding for or on account of any tax, assessment or other governmental charge described in the Securities of that series. If any such withholding shall be required, then such Officers' Certificate shall specify by country the amount, if any, required to be withheld on such payments to such Holders of Securities of that series and the Company will pay to the Trustee or such Paying Agent the Additional Amounts required by the terms of such Securities. In the event that the Trustee or any Paying Agent, as the case may be, shall not so receive the above-mentioned certificate, then the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall be entitled (i) to assume that no such withholding or deduction is required with respect to any payment of principal or interest with respect to any Securities of a series until it shall have received a certificate advising otherwise, and (ii) to make all payments of principal and interest with respect to the Securities of a series without withholding or deductions until otherwise advised. The Company covenants to indemnify the Trustee and any Paying Agent for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability or expense reasonably incurred without negligence or bad faith on their part arising out of or in connection with actions taken or omitted by any of them in reliance on any Officers' Certificate furnished pursuant to this Section 1004 or in reliance on the Company's not furnishing such an Officers' Certificate.

Section 1005. Statement as to Compliance.

(1) The Company will deliver to the Trustee, within 120 days after the end of each fiscal year ending after the date hereof (which fiscal year ends on December 31), so long as any Security is Outstanding hereunder, a brief certificate from the principal executive officer, principal financial officer or principal accounting officer of the Company as to his or her knowledge of the Company's compliance with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 1005, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice under this Indenture.

(2) The Company will, so long as any series of Securities are Outstanding, deliver to the Trustee, within five Business Days of any officer listed in paragraph (1) immediately above becoming aware of any Default, Event of Default or default in the performance of any covenant, agreement or condition contained in this Indenture, an Officers' Certificate specifying such Default, Event of Default, default or event of default and what action the Company is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto and the status thereof.

Section 1006. Waiver of Certain Covenants.

As specified pursuant to Section 301(15), for Securities of any series, the Company may omit in any particular instance to comply with any covenant or condition set forth in any covenants of the Company added to Article Ten pursuant to Section 301(14) or Section 301(15) in connection with the Securities of a series, if before or after the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of such series, by Act of such Holders, either waive such compliance in such instance or generally waive compliance with such covenant or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such covenant or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such covenant or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

**ARTICLE ELEVEN.
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES**

Section 1101. Applicability of Article.

Securities of any series that are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with their terms and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article Eleven.

Section 1102. Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any series, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), an Officers' Certificate notifying the Trustee in writing of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed, and, if applicable, of the tenor of the Securities to be redeemed, and shall deliver to the Trustee such documentation and records as shall enable the Trustee to select the Securities to be redeemed pursuant to Section 1103. In the case of any redemption of Securities of any series prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

Section 1103. Selection by Trustee of Securities to Be Redeemed.

If less than all the Securities of any series issued on the same day with the same terms are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee in compliance with the requirements of DTC, from the Outstanding Securities of such series issued on such date with the same terms not previously called for redemption, in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which the Securities are listed (if the Securities are listed on any national securities exchange), or if the Securities are not held through DTC or listed on any national securities exchange, or DTC prescribed no method of selection, on a pro rata basis, or by such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and subject to and otherwise in accordance with the procedures of the applicable Depository; provided, however, that such method complies with the rules of any national securities exchange or quotation system on which the Securities are listed, and may provide for the selection for redemption of portions (equal to the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of Securities of such series of a denomination larger than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of that series; provided, however, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security not redeemed to less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company and the Security Registrar (if other than itself) in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

Section 1104. Notice of Redemption.

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 30 days nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, unless a shorter period is specified by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed, but failure to give such notice in the manner herein provided to the Holder of any Security designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other such Security or portion thereof.

Any notice that is mailed to the Holders of Registered Securities in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the Holder receives the notice.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date;

- (2) the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 1106;
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amount) of the particular Security or Securities to be redeemed;
- (4) in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state that on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the Holder will receive, without a charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed;
- (5) that on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 1106 will become due and payable upon each such Security, or the portion thereof, to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon shall cease to accrue on and after said date;
- (6) the Place or Places of Payment where such Securities, are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any;
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case; and
- (8) the CUSIP number of such Security, if any.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by Section 106 need not identify particular Registered Securities to be redeemed. Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company.

Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or prior to 10:00 am, New York City time, on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, which it may not do in the case of a sinking fund payment under Article Twelve, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)) sufficient to pay on the Redemption Date the Redemption Price of, and (unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301) accrued interest on, all the Securities or portions thereof which are to be redeemed on that date; provided, however, that to the extent any such funds are received by the Trustee or a Paying Agent from the Company after 10:00 am, New York City time, on the due date, such funds will be deemed deposited within one Business Day of receipt thereof.

Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)) (together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date), and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any) such Securities shall if the same were interest-bearing cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Redemption Date; provided, however, that unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301, installments of interest on Registered Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the Redemption Price shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate of interest set forth in such Security or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, at the Yield to Maturity of such Security.

Section 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Registered Security that is to be redeemed only in part (pursuant to the provisions of this Article Eleven or of Article Twelve) shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or such Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security at the expense of the Company and without service charge a new Security or Securities of the same series and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered. If a temporary global Security or permanent global Security is so surrendered, such new Security so issued shall be a new temporary global Security or permanent global Security, respectively. However, if less than all the Securities of any series with differing issue dates, interest rates and stated maturities are to be redeemed, the Company in its sole discretion shall select the particular Securities to be redeemed and shall notify the Trustee in writing thereof at least 45 days prior to the relevant redemption date.

**ARTICLE TWELVE.
SINKING FUNDS**

Section 1201. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article Twelve shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 301 for Securities of such series.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of such Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of any Securities of any series, the cash amount of any mandatory sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in [Section 1202](#). Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

Section 1202. Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of a series, (1) deliver Outstanding Securities of such series (other than any previously called for redemption), and (2) apply as a credit Securities of such series which have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, as provided for by the terms of such Securities; provided, however, that such Securities so delivered or applied as a credit have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the applicable Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such mandatory sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

Section 1203. Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 60 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for Securities of any series, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of that series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to [Section 301](#) for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in [Section 312\(b\)](#), [Section 312\(d\)](#) and [Section 312\(e\)](#)) and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to [Section 1202](#), and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered and credited. If such Officers’ Certificate shall specify an optional amount to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in [Section 1103](#) and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in [Section 1104](#). Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in [Section 1106](#) and [Section 1107](#).

ARTICLE THIRTEEN.
REPAYMENT AT THE OPTION OF HOLDERS

Section 1301. Applicability of Article.

Repayment of Securities of any series before their Stated Maturity at the option of Holders thereof shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified by the terms of such series established pursuant to Section 301) in accordance with this Article Thirteen.

Section 1302. Repayment of Securities.

Securities of any series subject to repayment in whole or in part at the option of the Holders thereof will, unless otherwise provided in the terms of such Securities, be repaid at the Repayment Price thereof, together with interest, if any, thereon accrued to the Repayment Date specified in or pursuant to the terms of such Securities. The Company covenants that on or before 10:00 am, New York City time, on the Repayment Date it will deposit with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Section 312(b), Section 312(d) and Section 312(e)) sufficient to pay the Repayment Price of, and (unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301) accrued interest on, all the Securities or portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid on such date; provided, however, that to the extent any such funds are received by the Trustee or a Paying Agent from the Company after 10:00 a.m., New York City time, on the due date, such funds will be distributed to the Holders within one Business Day of receipt thereof.

Section 1303. Exercise of Option.

Securities of any series subject to repayment at the option of the Holders thereof will contain an “Option to Elect Repayment” form on the reverse of such Securities. To be repaid at the option of the Holder, any Security so providing for such repayment, with the “Option to Elect Repayment” form on the reverse of such Security duly completed by the Holder (or by the Holder’s attorney duly authorized in writing), must be received by the Company at the Place of Payment therefor specified in the terms of such Security (or at such other place or places of which the Company shall from time to time notify the Holders of such Securities) not earlier than 45 days nor later than 30 days prior to the Repayment Date. If less than the entire Repayment Price of such Security is to be repaid in accordance with the terms of such Security, the portion of the Repayment Price of such Security to be repaid, in increments of the minimum denomination for Securities of such series, and the denomination or denominations of the Security or Securities to be issued to the Holder for the portion of such Security surrendered that is not to be repaid, must be specified. Any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof may not be repaid in part if, following such repayment, the unpaid principal amount of such Security would be less than the minimum authorized denomination of Securities of the series of which such Security to be repaid is a part. Except as otherwise may be provided by the terms of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof, exercise of the repayment option by the Holder shall be irrevocable unless waived by the Company.

Section 1304. When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable.

If Securities of any series providing for repayment at the option of the Holders thereof shall have been surrendered as provided in this Article Thirteen and as provided by or pursuant to the terms of such Securities, such Securities or the portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid shall become due and payable and shall be paid by the Company on the Repayment Date therein specified, and on and after such Repayment Date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of such Securities on such Repayment Date) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for repayment in accordance with such provisions, the Repayment Price of such Security so to be repaid shall be paid by the Company, together with accrued interest, if any, to the Repayment Date; provided, however, that installments of interest on Registered Securities, whose Stated Maturity is prior to (or, if specified pursuant to Section 301, on) the Repayment Date shall be payable (but without interest thereon, unless the Company shall default in the payment thereof) to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security surrendered for repayment shall not be so repaid upon surrender thereof, the Repayment Price shall, until paid, bear interest from the Repayment Date at the rate of interest set forth in such Security or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, at the Yield to Maturity of such Security.

Section 1305. Securities Repaid in Part.

Upon surrender of any Registered Security that is to be repaid in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security, without service charge and at the expense of the Company, a new Registered Security or Securities of the same series, and of like tenor, of any authorized denomination specified by the Holder, in an aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the portion of the principal of such Security so surrendered that is not to be repaid. If a temporary global Security or permanent global Security is so surrendered, such new Security so issued shall be a new temporary global Security or a new permanent global Security, respectively.

**ARTICLE FOURTEEN.
DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE**

Section 1401. Applicability of Article; Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

If pursuant to Section 301 provision is made for either or both of (a) defeasance of the Securities of or within a series under Section 1402, or (b) covenant defeasance of the Securities of or within a series under Section 1403, then the provisions of such Section or Sections, as the case may be, together with the other provisions of this Article Fourteen (with such modifications thereto as may be specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to any Securities), shall be applicable to such Securities, and the Company may at its option by Board Resolution, at any time, with respect to such Securities, elect to have either Section 1402 (if applicable) or Section 1403 (if applicable) be applied to such Outstanding Securities upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Article Fourteen.

Section 1402. Defeasance and Discharge.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 1402 with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Outstanding Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1404 are satisfied (hereinafter, "defeasance"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Outstanding Securities, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of Section 1405 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (A) and (B) of this Section 1402, and to have satisfied all its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of such Outstanding Securities to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 1404 and as more fully set forth in such Section 1404, payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Securities when such payments are due; (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Section 305, Section 306, Section 1002 and Section 1003 and with respect to the payment of Additional Amounts, if any, on such Securities as contemplated by Section 1004; (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder, and (D) this Article Fourteen. Subject to compliance with this Article Fourteen, the Company may exercise its option under this Section 1402 notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 1403 with respect to such Securities. Following a defeasance, payment of such Securities may not be accelerated because of an Event of Default.

Section 1403. Covenant Defeasance.

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 1403 with respect to any Securities of or within a series, if specified pursuant to Section 301, the Company shall be released from its obligations under any covenant, with respect to such Outstanding Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 1404 are satisfied (hereinafter, "covenant defeasance"), and such Securities shall thereafter be deemed to be not "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenant, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that, with respect to such Outstanding Securities, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or such other covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or such other covenant or by reason of reference in any such Section or such other covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under Section 501(4) or Section 501(8) or otherwise, as the case may be, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby. Following a covenant defeasance, payment of such Securities may not be accelerated because of an Event of Default solely by reference to such Sections specified above in this Section 1403.

Section 1404. Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance.

The following shall be the conditions to application of either Section 1402 or Section 1403 to any Outstanding Securities of or within a series:

(a) The Company shall have irrevocably deposited or caused to be irrevocably deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 607 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Fourteen applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for the benefit of, and dedicated solely to, the Holders of such Securities, (1) an amount (in such Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity), or (2) Government Obligations applicable to such Securities (determined on the basis of the Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity) which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Securities, money in an amount, or (3) a combination thereof in an amount, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, (i) the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Outstanding Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest and (ii) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Outstanding Securities on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities.

(b) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound.

(c) No Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or, insofar as Section 501(5) and Section 501(6) are concerned, at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).

(d) In the case of an election under Section 1402, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel stating that (i) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (ii) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable Federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred.

(e) In the case of an election under Section 1403, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to Federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.

(f) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to either the defeasance under Section 1402 or the covenant defeasance under Section 1403 (as the case may be) have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that as a result of a deposit pursuant to subsection (a) above and the related exercise of the Company's option under Section 1402 or Section 1403 (as the case may be), registration is not required under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, by the Company, with respect to the trust funds representing such deposit or by the trustee for such trust funds.

(g) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section 1404, such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations which may be imposed on the Company in connection therewith pursuant to Section 301.

Section 1405. Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 301) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee, collectively for purposes of this Section 1405, the "Trustee") pursuant to Section 1404 in respect of any Outstanding Securities of any series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Security pursuant to Section 301, if, after a deposit referred to in Section 1404(a) has been made, (a) the Holder of a Security in respect of which such deposit was made is entitled to, and does, elect pursuant to Section 312(b) or the terms of such Security to receive payment in a Currency other than that in which the deposit pursuant to Section 1404(a) has been made in respect of such Security, or (b) a Conversion Event occurs as contemplated in Section 312(d) or Section 312(e) or by the terms of any Security in respect of which the deposit pursuant to Section 1404(a) has been made, the indebtedness represented by such Security shall be deemed to have been, and will be, fully discharged and satisfied through the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on such Security as the same becomes due out of the proceeds yielded by converting (from time to time as specified below in the case of any such election) the amount or other property deposited in respect of such Security into the Currency in which such Security becomes payable as a result of such election or Conversion Event based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect on the second Business Day prior to each payment date, except, with respect to a Conversion Event, such conversion shall be based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect (as nearly as feasible) at the time of the Conversion Event.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the money or Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 1404 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of such Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Article Fourteen to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in Section 1404 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect a defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Article Fourteen.

ARTICLE FIFTEEN. MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Section 1501. Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.

A meeting of Holders of any series of Securities may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article Fifteen to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

Section 1502. Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.

(a) The Trustee may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purpose specified in Section 1501, to be held at such time and at such place in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York as the Trustee shall determine. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in Section 106.

(b) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustee to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in Section 1501, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have made the first publication or mailing of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in subsection (a) of this Section 1502.

Section 1503. Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series by such Holder or Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

Section 1504. Quorum; Action.

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; provided, however, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of not less than a specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 1502(a), except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.

Except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series; provided, however, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution with respect to any consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section 1504 shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 1504, if any action is to be taken at a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series with respect to any consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected thereby, or of the Holders of such series and one or more additional series:

- (i) there shall be no minimum quorum requirement for such meeting; and
- (ii) the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series that vote in favor of such consent, waiver, request, demand, notice, authorization, direction or other action shall be taken into account in determining whether such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action has been made, given or taken under this Indenture.

Section 1505. Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104 and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in Section 104 or other proof.

(b) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in Section 1502(b), in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.

(c) At any meeting of Holders, each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by such Holder; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or proxy.

(d) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to Section 1502 at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting, and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

Section 1506. Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the fact, setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 1502 and, if applicable, Section 1504. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

**ARTICLE SIXTEEN.
SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES**

Section 1601. Agreement to Subordinate.

The Company, for itself, its successors and assigns, covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Subordinated Securities by his acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on each and all of the Subordinated Securities is hereby expressly subordinated, to the extent and in the manner hereinafter set forth, in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness.

Section 1602. Distribution on Dissolution, Liquidation and Reorganization; Subrogation of Subordinated Securities.

Upon any distribution of assets of the Company upon any dissolution, winding up, liquidation or reorganization of the Company, whether in bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or receivership proceedings or upon an assignment for the benefit of creditors or any other marshalling of the assets and liabilities of the Company or otherwise (subject to the power of a court of competent jurisdiction to make other equitable provision reflecting the rights conferred in this Indenture upon the

Senior Indebtedness and the holders thereof with respect to the Securities and the holders thereof by a lawful plan of reorganization under applicable bankruptcy law):

(a) the holders of all Senior Indebtedness shall be entitled to receive payment in full of the principal thereof (and premium, if any) and interest due thereon (including post-petition interest) before the Holders of the Subordinated Securities are entitled to receive any payment upon the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on indebtedness evidenced by the Subordinated Securities; and

(b) any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, to which the Holders of the Securities or the Trustee would be entitled except for the provisions of this Article Sixteen shall be paid by the liquidating trustee or agent or other person making such payment or distribution, whether a trustee in bankruptcy, a receiver or liquidating trustee or otherwise, directly to the holders of Senior Indebtedness or their representative or representatives or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture under which any instruments evidencing any of such Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, ratably according to the aggregate amounts remaining unpaid on account of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Senior Indebtedness held or represented by each, to the extent necessary to make payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness; and

(c) in the event that, notwithstanding the foregoing, any payment or distribution of assets of the Company of any kind or character, whether in cash, property or securities, shall be received by the Trustee or the Holders of the Subordinated Securities before all Senior Indebtedness is paid in full, such payment or distribution shall be paid over, upon written notice to the Trustee, to the holder of such Senior Indebtedness or their representative or representatives or to the trustee or trustees under any indenture under which any instrument evidencing any of such Senior Indebtedness may have been issued, ratably as aforesaid, for application to payment of all Senior Indebtedness remaining unpaid until all such Senior Indebtedness shall have been paid in full, after giving effect to any concurrent payment or distribution to the holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

Subject to the payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness, the Holders of the Subordinated Securities shall be subrogated to the rights of the holders of Senior Indebtedness to receive payments or distributions of cash, property or securities of the Company applicable to Senior Indebtedness until the principal of (and premium, if any, on) and interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities shall be paid in full and no such payments or distributions to the Holders of the Subordinated Securities of cash, property or securities otherwise distributable to the holders of Senior Indebtedness shall, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of the Subordinated Securities be deemed to be a payment by the Company to or on account of the Subordinated Securities. It is understood that the provisions of this Article Sixteen are and are intended solely for the purpose of defining the relative rights of the Holders of the Subordinated Securities, on the one hand, and the holders of the Senior Indebtedness, on the other hand. Nothing contained in this Article Sixteen or elsewhere in this Indenture or in the Subordinated Securities is intended to or shall impair, as between the Company, its creditors other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, and the Holders of the Subordinated Securities, the obligation of the Company, which is unconditional and absolute, to pay to the Holders of the Subordinated Securities the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with their terms, or to affect the relative rights of the Holders of the Subordinated Securities and creditors of the Company other than the holders of Senior Indebtedness, nor shall anything herein or in the Subordinated Securities prevent the Trustee or the Holder of any Subordinated Security from exercising all remedies otherwise permitted by applicable law upon default under this Indenture, subject to the rights, if any, under this Article Sixteen of the holders of Senior Indebtedness in respect of cash, property or securities of the Company received upon the exercise of any such remedy. Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article Sixteen, the Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 601, shall be entitled to rely upon a certificate of the liquidating trustee or agent or other person making any distribution to the Trustee for the purpose of ascertaining the Persons entitled to participate in such distribution, the holders of Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article Sixteen.

If the Trustee or any Holder of Subordinated Securities does not file a proper claim or proof of debt in the form required in any proceeding referred to above prior to 30 days before the expiration of the time to file such claim in such proceeding, then the holder of any Senior Indebtedness is hereby authorized, and has the right, to file an appropriate claim or claims for or on behalf of such Holder of Subordinated Securities.

With respect to the holders of Senior Indebtedness, the Trustee undertakes to perform or to observe only such of its covenants or obligations as are specifically set forth in this Article Sixteen and no implied covenants or obligations with respect to holders of Senior Indebtedness shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. The Trustee does not owe any fiduciary duties to the holders of Senior Indebtedness other than Securities issued under this Indenture.

Section 1603. No Payment on Subordinated Securities in Event of Default on Senior Indebtedness.

No payment by the Company on account of principal (or premium, if any), sinking funds or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities shall be made unless full payment of amounts then due for principal (premium, if any), sinking funds and interest on Senior Indebtedness has been made or duly provided for in money or money's worth.

Section 1604. Payments on Subordinated Securities Permitted.

Nothing contained in this Indenture or in any of the Subordinated Securities shall (a) affect the obligation of the Company to make, or prevent the Company from making, at any time except as provided in Section 1602 and Section 1603, payments of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities, (b) without limiting clause (c) of this sentence, prevent the application by the Trustee of any moneys deposited with it hereunder to the payment of or on account of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities, unless the Trustee shall have received at its Corporate Trust Office written notice of any event prohibiting the making of such payment more than three Business Days prior to the date fixed for such payment, or (c) prevent the application by the Trustee of any moneys or the proceeds of Government Obligations deposited with it pursuant to Section 1404(a) to the payment of or on account of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) or interest, if any, on the Subordinated Securities if all the conditions specified in Section 1404 to the application of Section 1402 or Section 1403, as applicable, have been satisfied prior to the date the Trustee shall have received at its Corporate Trust Office written notice of any event prohibiting the making of such payment.

Section 1605. Authorization of Holders to Trustee to Effect Subordination.

Each Holder of Subordinated Securities by his acceptance thereof authorizes and directs the Trustee on his behalf to take such action as may be necessary or appropriate to effectuate the subordination as provided in this Article Sixteen and appoints the Trustee his attorney-in-fact for any and all such purposes.

Section 1606. Notices to Trustee.

Notwithstanding the provisions of this Article Sixteen or any other provisions of this Indenture, neither the Trustee nor any Paying Agent (other than the Company) shall be charged with knowledge of the existence of any Senior Indebtedness or of any event that would prohibit the making of any payment of moneys to or by the Trustee or such Paying Agent, unless and until the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall have received (in the case of the Trustee, at its Corporate Trust Office) written notice thereof from the Company or from the holder of any Senior Indebtedness or from the trustee for any such holder, together with proof satisfactory to the Trustee of such holding of Senior Indebtedness or of the authority of such trustee; provided, however, that if at least three Business Days prior to the date upon which by the terms hereof any such moneys may become payable for any purpose (including, without limitation, the payment of either the principal (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Subordinated Security) the Trustee shall not have received with respect to such moneys the notice provided for in this Section 1606, then, anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall have full power and authority to receive such moneys and to apply the same to the purpose for which they were received, and shall not be affected by any notice to the contrary, which may be received by it within three Business Days prior to such date. The Trustee shall be entitled to rely on the delivery to it of a written notice by a Person representing himself to be a holder of Senior Indebtedness (or a trustee on behalf of such holder) to establish that such a notice has been given by a holder of Senior Indebtedness or a trustee on behalf of any such holder. In the event that the Trustee determines in good faith that further evidence is required with respect to the right of any Person as a holder of Senior Indebtedness to participate in any payment or distribution pursuant to this Article Sixteen, the Trustee may request such Person to furnish evidence to the reasonable satisfaction of the Trustee as to the amount of Senior Indebtedness held by such Person, the extent to which such Person is entitled to participate in such payment or distribution and any other facts pertinent to the rights of such Person under this Article Sixteen and, if such evidence is not furnished, the Trustee may defer any payment to such Person pending judicial determination as to the right of such Person to receive such payment.

Section 1607. Trustee as Holder of Senior Indebtedness.

The Trustee in its individual capacity shall be entitled to all the rights set forth in this Article Sixteen in respect of any Senior Indebtedness at any time held by it to the same extent as any other holder of Senior Indebtedness and nothing in this Indenture shall be construed to deprive the Trustee of any of its rights as such holder.

Nothing in this Article Sixteen shall apply to claims of, or payments to, the Trustee under or pursuant to Section 606.

Section 1608. Modifications of Terms of Senior Indebtedness.

Any renewal or extension of the time of payment of any Senior Indebtedness or the exercise by the holders of Senior Indebtedness of any of their rights under any instrument creating or evidencing Senior Indebtedness, including, without limitation, the waiver of default thereunder, may be made or done all without notice to or assent from the Holders of the Subordinated Securities or the Trustee.

No compromise, alteration, amendment, modification, extension, renewal or other change of, or waiver, consent or other action in respect of, any liability or obligation under or in respect of, or of any of the terms, covenants or conditions of any indenture or other instrument under which any Senior Indebtedness is outstanding or of such Senior Indebtedness, whether or not any of the foregoing are in accordance with the provisions of any applicable document, shall in any way alter or affect any of the provisions of this Article Sixteen or of the Subordinated Securities relating to the subordination thereof.

Section 1609. Reliance on Judicial Order or Certificate of Liquidating Agent.

Upon any payment or distribution of assets of the Company referred to in this Article Sixteen, the Trustee and the Holders of the Securities shall be entitled to rely upon any order or decree entered by any court of competent jurisdiction in which such insolvency, bankruptcy, receivership, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution, winding up or similar case or proceeding is pending, or a certificate of the trustee in bankruptcy, liquidating trustee, custodian, receiver, assignee for the benefit of creditors, agent or other person making such payment or distribution, delivered to the Trustee or to the Holders of Subordinated Securities, for the purpose of ascertaining the persons entitled to participate in such payment or distribution, the holders of Senior Indebtedness and other indebtedness of the Company, the amount thereof or payable thereon, the amount or amounts paid or distributed thereon and all other facts pertinent thereto or to this Article Sixteen.

* * * * *

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same Indenture. The exchange of copies of this Indenture and delivery of signature pages by facsimile, .pdf transmission, e-mail or other electronic means shall constitute effective execution and delivery of this Indenture for all purposes. Signatures of the parties hereto transmitted by facsimile, .pdf transmission, e-mail or other electronic means shall be deemed to be their original signatures for all purposes.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, as of the day and year first above written.

GSV CAPITAL CORP.

By: /s/ William Tanona

Name: William Tanona

Title: Chief Financial Officer

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,

as Trustee

By: /s/ Karen Beard

Name: Karen R. Beard

Title: Vice President

[Signature Page to Indenture]

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM T-1

**STATEMENT OF ELIGIBILITY UNDER
THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939 OF A
CORPORATION DESIGNATED TO ACT AS TRUSTEE**

Check if an Application to Determine Eligibility of
a Trustee Pursuant to Section 305(b)(2)

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

(Exact name of Trustee as specified in its charter)

31-0841368

I.R.S. Employer Identification No.

800 Nicollet Mall Minneapolis, Minnesota	55402
(Address of principal executive offices)	(Zip Code)

Karen R. Beard
U.S. Bank National Association
One Federal Street – 10th Floor
Boston, MA 02110
(617) 603-6565
(Name, address and telephone number of agent for service)

SuRo Capital Corp.

(Issuer with respect to the Securities)

Maryland	27-4443543
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)	(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

One Sansome Street, Suite 730 San Francisco, California	94104
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)	(Zip Code)

Debt Securities

(Title of the Indenture Securities)

FORM T-1

Item 1. GENERAL INFORMATION. Furnish the following information as to the Trustee.

a) *Name and address of each examining or supervising authority to which it is subject.*

Comptroller of the Currency
Washington, D.C.

b) *Whether it is authorized to exercise corporate trust powers.*

Yes

Item 2. AFFILIATIONS WITH OBLIGOR. *If the obligor is an affiliate of the Trustee, describe each such affiliation.*

None

Items 3-15 *Items 3-15 are not applicable because to the best of the Trustee's knowledge, the obligor is not in default under any Indenture for which the Trustee acts as Trustee.*

Item 16. LIST OF EXHIBITS: *List below all exhibits filed as a part of this statement of eligibility and qualification.*

1. A copy of the Articles of Association of the Trustee.*
2. A copy of the certificate of authority of the Trustee to commence business, attached as Exhibit 2.
3. A copy of the certificate of authority of the Trustee to exercise corporate trust powers, attached as Exhibit 3.
4. A copy of the existing bylaws of the Trustee.**
5. A copy of each Indenture referred to in Item 4. Not applicable.
6. The consent of the Trustee required by Section 321(b) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, attached as Exhibit 6.
7. Report of Condition of the Trustee as of March 31, 2020 published pursuant to law or the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, attached as Exhibit 7.

* Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 25.1 to Amendment No. 2 to registration statement on S-4, Registration Number 333-128217 filed on November 15, 2005.

** Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 25.1 to registration statement on form S-3ASR, Registration Number 333-199863 filed on November 5, 2014.

SIGNATURE

Pursuant to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, the Trustee, U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, has duly caused this statement of eligibility and qualification to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, all in the City of Boston, Commonwealth of Massachusetts on the 1st of July, 2020.

By: /s/ Karen R. Beard

Karen R. Beard

Vice President



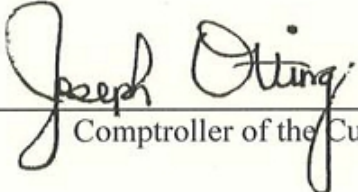
CERTIFICATE OF CORPORATE EXISTENCE

I, Joseph Otting, Comptroller of the Currency, do hereby certify that:

1. The Comptroller of the Currency, pursuant to Revised Statutes 324, et seq, as amended, and 12 USC 1, et seq, as amended, has possession, custody, and control of all records pertaining to the chartering, regulation, and supervision of all national banking associations.
2. "U.S. Bank National Association," Cincinnati, Ohio (Charter No. 24), is a national banking association formed under the laws of the United States and is authorized thereunder to transact the business of banking on the date of this certificate.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, today,
February 24, 2020, I have hereunto
subscribed my name and caused my seal
of office to be affixed to these presents at
the U.S. Department of the Treasury, in
the City of Washington, District of
Columbia





Comptroller of the Currency



CERTIFICATE OF FIDUCIARY POWERS

I, Joseph Otting, Comptroller of the Currency, do hereby certify that:

1. The Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, pursuant to Revised Statutes 324, et seq, as amended, and 12 USC 1, et seq, as amended, has possession, custody, and control of all records pertaining to the chartering, regulation, and supervision of all national banking associations.
2. "U.S. Bank National Association," Cincinnati, Ohio (Charter No. 24), was granted, under the hand and seal of the Comptroller, the right to act in all fiduciary capacities authorized under the provisions of the Act of Congress approved September 28, 1962, 76 Stat. 668, 12 USC 92a, and that the authority so granted remains in full force and effect on the date of this certificate.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, today,
December 10, 2019, I have hereunto
subscribed my name and caused my seal of
office to be affixed to these presents at the
U.S. Department of the Treasury, in the City
of Washington, District of Columbia.



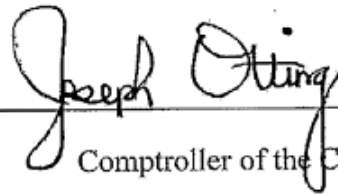

Comptroller of the Currency

Exhibit 6

CONSENT

In accordance with Section 321(b) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, the undersigned, U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION hereby consents that reports of examination of the undersigned by Federal, State, Territorial or District authorities may be furnished by such authorities to the Securities and Exchange Commission upon its request therefor.

Dated: July 1, 2020

By: /s/ Karen R. Beard

Karen R. Beard

Vice President

Exhibit 7

U.S. Bank National Association
Statement of Financial Condition
As of 3/31/2020

(\$000's)

	<u>3/31/2020</u>
Assets	
Cash and Balances Due From Depository Institutions	\$ 46,699,020
Securities	122,149,987
Federal Funds	2,807
Loans & Lease Financing Receivables	316,711,655
Fixed Assets	9,075,777
Intangible Assets	12,477,802
Other Assets	26,012,043
Total Assets	\$ 533,129,091
Liabilities	
Deposits	\$ 405,823,094
Fed Funds	1,428,527
Treasury Demand Notes	0
Trading Liabilities	1,392,214
Other Borrowed Money	55,078,404
Acceptances	0
Subordinated Notes and Debentures	3,850,000
Other Liabilities	14,338,298
Total Liabilities	\$ 481,910,537
Equity	
Common and Preferred Stock	18,200
Surplus	14,266,915
Undivided Profits	36,132,907
Minority Interest in Subsidiaries	800,532
Total Equity Capital	\$ 51,218,554
Total Liabilities and Equity Capital	\$ 533,129,091

[Letterhead of Eversheds Sutherland (US) LLP]

July 2, 2020

SuRo Capital Corp.
One Sansome Street
Suite 730
San Francisco, CA 94104

Re: SuRo Capital Corp.
Registration Statement on Form N-2

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to SuRo Capital Corp., a Maryland corporation (the "**Company**"), in connection with the preparation and filing by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "**Commission**") of a registration statement on Form N-2 which was filed on July 2, 2020 (as amended from time to time, the "**Registration Statement**") under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"), with respect to the offer, issuance and sale, from time to time, pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act, of up to \$400,000,000 in aggregate offering amount of the following securities (the "**Securities**");

- (a) shares of the Company's common stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the "**Common Stock**"), including Common Stock to be issuable upon exercise of the Rights and/or the Warrants (as such terms are defined below) (the "**Common Shares**");
- (b) shares of the Company's preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the "**Preferred Stock**"), including Preferred Stock to be issuable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "**Preferred Shares**");
- (c) subscription rights to purchase Common Stock (the "**Rights**");
- (d) debt securities of the Company, including debt securities to be issuable upon exercise of the Warrants (the "**Debt Securities**"); and
- (e) warrants representing rights to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the "**Warrants**").

The Registration Statement provides that the Securities may be sold from time to time in amounts, at prices, and on terms to be set forth in one or more supplements (each, a "**Prospectus Supplement**") to the final prospectus included in the Registration Statement at the time it becomes effective (the "**Prospectus**").

The Debt Securities are to be issued under (i) an indenture (the "**Base Indenture**"), dated as of March 28, 2018, entered into by and between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association (the "**Trustee**") and (ii) one or more supplemental indentures thereto (each, a "**Supplemental Indenture**" and together with the Base Indenture, the "**Indenture**"). The Rights are to be issued under rights agreements to be entered into by and between the Company and the purchasers thereof, or a rights agent to be identified in the applicable rights agreement (the "**Rights Agreement**"). The Warrants will be issued under warrant agreements (each a "**Warrant Agreement**") to be entered into by and between the Company and the purchasers thereof, or a warrant agent to be identified in the applicable warrant agreement (the "**Warrant Agent**").

As counsel to the Company, we have participated in the preparation of the Registration Statement and have examined the originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction as being true copies, of such records, documents or other instruments as we in our judgment have deemed to be necessary or appropriate to enable us to render the opinions hereinafter expressed including, without limitation, of the following:

- (i) The Articles of Amendment and Restatement of the Company (the “Charter”), certified as of a recent date by the State Department of Assessments and Taxation of Maryland (the “SDAT”);
- (ii) The Second Amended and Restated Bylaws of the Company (the “Bylaws”), certified as of the date hereof by an officer of the Company;
- (iii) A Certificate of Good Standing with respect to the Company issued by the SDAT as of a recent date (the “Certificate of Good Standing”);
- (iv) The Base Indenture; and
- (v) The resolutions of the board of directors (the “**Board**”) of the Company relating to, among other things, (a) the authorization and approval of the preparation and filing of the Registration Statement, (b) the authorization, execution and delivery of the Base Indenture, and (c) the authorization, issuance, offer and sale of the Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement, certified as of the date hereof by an officer of the Company (collectively, the “**Resolutions**”).

With respect to such examination and our opinions expressed herein, we have assumed, without any independent investigation or verification, (i) the genuineness of all signatures on all documents submitted to us for examination, (ii) the legal capacity of all natural persons, (iii) the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, (iv) the conformity to original documents of all documents submitted to us as conformed or reproduced copies and the authenticity of the originals of such copied documents, (v) that each Supplemental Indenture, Warrant Agreement and Rights Agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of New York and (v) that the Base Indenture, the Warrant Agreements, and the Rights Agreements will be valid and legally binding obligations of the parties thereto (other than the Company).

As to certain matters of fact relevant to the opinions in this opinion letter, we have relied upon certificates of public officials (which we have assumed remain accurate as of the date of this opinion) and upon certificates of officers of the Company. We have not independently established the facts, or in the case of certificates of public officials, the other statements, so relied upon.

The opinions set forth below are limited to the effect of the Maryland General Corporation Law (the “*MGCL*”), and, as to the Debt Securities, the Warrants and the Rights constituting valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, the laws of the State of New York, in each case, as in effect on the date hereof, and we express no opinion as to the applicability or effect of any other laws of such jurisdiction or the laws of any other jurisdictions. Without limiting the preceding sentence, we express no opinion as to any federal or state securities or broker-dealer laws or regulations thereunder relating to the offer, issuance and sale of the Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement.

This opinion letter has been prepared, and should be interpreted, in accordance with customary practice followed in the preparation of opinion letters by lawyers who regularly give, and such customary practice followed by lawyers who on behalf of their clients regularly advise opinion recipients regarding, opinion letters of this kind.

The opinions expressed in paragraphs 3, 4 and 5 below are subject to the effect of (i) applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, receivership, moratorium, fraudulent conveyance and other similar laws affecting the rights and remedies of creditors generally, (ii) general principles of equity (including without limitation the availability of specific performance or injunctive relief and the application of concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing), regardless of whether considered in a proceeding at law or in equity, and (iii) federal or state securities laws or principles of public policy that may limit enforcement of rights to indemnity and contribution.

On the basis of and subject to the foregoing, and in reliance thereon, and subject to the limitations and qualifications set forth in this opinion letter, and assuming that (i) Articles Supplementary classifying and designating the number of shares and the terms of any class or series of the Preferred Stock to be issued by the Company (the “*Articles Supplementary*”) will have been duly authorized and determined or otherwise established by proper action of the Board or a duly authorized committee thereof in accordance with the Charter and Bylaws and have been filed with and accepted for record by the SDAT prior to the issuance of any such Preferred Stock, and such Articles Supplementary comply with the applicable requirements with respect thereto under the *MGCL* and the Company’s Charter and Bylaws, (ii) the Base Indenture and each Supplemental Indenture, containing the specific terms and conditions for each issuance of the Debt Securities will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by each of the Company and the Trustee in accordance with the terms of the Base Indenture, (iii) each Supplemental Indenture constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of each of the Company and the Trustee, (iv) the Debt Securities will not include any provision that is unenforceable against the Company, (v) the Warrant Agreement and the Warrants, including any amendments or supplements thereto, will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by each of the parties thereto in accordance with the terms of the Warrant Agreement, (vi) the Rights Agreement and the Rights, including any amendments, or supplements thereto, will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by each of the parties thereto, (vii) the issuance, offer and sale of the Securities from time to time and the final terms of such issuance, offer and sale, including those relating to price and amount of the Securities to be issued, offered and sold, and certain terms thereof, will have been duly authorized and determined or otherwise established by proper action of the Board or a duly authorized committee thereof in accordance with the Charter, if applicable, the Articles Supplementary, if applicable, the Base Indenture, if applicable, the Warrant Agreement, if applicable, the Rights Agreement, if applicable, and the Company’s Bylaws, if applicable, and are consistent with the terms and conditions for such issuance, offer and sale set forth in the Resolutions and the descriptions thereof in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus and the applicable Prospectus Supplement (such authorization or action being hereinafter referred to as the “*Corporate Proceedings*”), (viii) the terms of the Debt Securities, the Warrants and the Rights as established and the issuance thereof (a) will not violate any applicable law, (b) will not violate or result in a default under or breach of any agreement, instrument or other document binding upon the Company, and (c) will comply with all requirements or restrictions imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company, (ix) each issuance of the Debt Securities will have been duly executed by the Company and duly authenticated by the Trustee in accordance with the Base Indenture, as supplemented by the applicable Supplemental Indenture, and delivered to, and the agreed consideration will have been fully paid at the time of such delivery by, the purchasers thereof, (x) at the time of issuance of the Debt Securities, after giving effect to such issuance of the Debt Securities, the Company will be in compliance with Section 18(a)(1)(A) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended, giving effect to Section 61(a)(2) thereof, (xi) any Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Warrants issued and sold pursuant to the Registration Statement, including upon the exercise of any Securities convertible into or exercisable for Common Stock or Preferred Stock, will have been delivered to, and the agreed consideration will have been fully paid at the time of such delivery by, the purchasers thereof, (xii) upon the issuance of any Common Stock or Preferred Stock by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement, including upon the exercise of any Securities convertible into or exercisable for Common Stock or Preferred Stock, the total number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, issued and outstanding will not exceed the total number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, that the Company is then authorized to issue under the Charter, and (xiii) the Certificate of Good Standing remains accurate, the Resolutions and the applicable Corporate Proceedings remain in effect, without amendment, and the Registration Statement has become effective under the Securities Act and remains effective at the time of the issuance, offer and/or sale of the Securities, we are of the opinion that:

1. Upon completion of all Corporate Proceedings with respect thereto, the issuance of the Common Stock by the Company will be duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Resolutions and all Corporate Proceedings relating thereto, the Common Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.
 2. Upon completion of all Corporate Proceedings with respect thereto, the issuance of the Preferred Stock will be duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Resolutions and all Corporate Proceedings relating thereto, the Preferred Stock will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.
 3. Upon completion of all Corporate Proceedings with respect thereto, the issuance of the Rights will be duly authorized and, when issued in accordance with the Rights Agreement, the Prospectus, the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Resolutions, and all Corporate Proceedings relating thereto, will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company.
 4. Upon completion of all Corporate Proceedings with respect thereto, the issuance of the Debt Securities will be duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the Base Indenture, the applicable Supplemental Indenture, the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Resolutions and all Corporate Proceedings relating thereto, each issuance of the Debt Securities will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company.
-

5. Upon completion of all Corporate Proceedings with respect thereto, the issuance of the Warrants will be duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the Warrant Agreement, the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Resolutions and all Corporate Proceedings relating thereto, the Warrants will constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company.

The opinions expressed in this opinion letter (i) are strictly limited to the matters stated in this opinion letter, and without limiting the foregoing, no other opinions are to be inferred and (ii) are only as of the date of this opinion letter, and we are under no obligation, and do not undertake, to advise the addressee of this opinion letter or any other person or entity either of any change of law or fact that occurs, or of any fact that comes to our attention, after the date of this opinion letter, even though such change or such fact may affect the legal analysis or a legal conclusion in this opinion letter.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion letter as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference of our firm in the "Legal Matters" section of the Registration Statement. We do not admit by giving this consent that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act and the rules and regulations thereunder.

Respectfully submitted,

/s/ EVERSHEDES SUTHERLAND (US) LLP

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM'S CONSENT

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement of SuRo Capital Corp. (f/k/a Sutter Rock Capital Corp.) on Form N-2 of our report dated March 13, 2020, with respect to our audit of the consolidated financial statements of Sutter Rock Capital Corp. as of December 31, 2019 and for the year then ended and our report dated March 13, 2020 with respect to our audit of internal control over financial reporting of Sutter Rock Capital Corp. as of December 31, 2019, which reports are included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K of Sutter Rock Capital Corp. for the year ended December 31, 2019.

We consent to the inclusion in this Registration Statement on Form N-2 of our report dated July 2, 2020, relating to the financial information set forth under the heading "Senior Securities" in such Prospectus, which is part of this Registration Statement.

We also consent to the references to us under the headings "Selected Financial and Other Data", "Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm", "Financial Statements and Exhibits" and the "Senior Securities" table in such Prospectus.

/s/ Marcum LLP

Marcum LLP
San Francisco, California
July 2, 2020

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We consent to the incorporation by reference in this Registration Statement on Form N-2 of our report dated April 17, 2019, relating to the consolidated financial statements and financial highlights of SuRo Capital Corp., and the effectiveness of SuRo Capital Corp.'s internal control over financial reporting, appearing in the Annual Report on Form 10-K of SuRo Capital Corp. for the year ended December 31, 2018.

We consent to use in this Registration Statement on Form N-2 of our report dated July 2, 2020, relating to the financial information set forth under the heading "Senior Securities" in such Prospectus, which is part of this Registration Statement.

We also consent to the references to us under the headings "Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm" and the "Senior Securities" table in such Prospectus.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

San Francisco, California
July 2, 2020

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM ON SUPPLEMENTAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders
of SuRo Capital Corp. (f/k/a Sutter Rock Capital Corp.):

We have audited the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities of Sutter Rock Capital Corp. and subsidiaries (the “Company”), including the consolidated schedule of investments, as of December 31, 2019, and the related consolidated statement of operations, changes in net assets, cash flows, and financial highlights for the year then ended and have issued our report thereon dated March 13, 2020, which contained an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements. The supplemental financial information set forth under the heading “Senior Securities” as of December 31, 2019 appearing on page 23 of the Prospectus has been subjected to audit procedures performed in conjunction with the audit of the Company’s consolidated financial statements. The supplemental financial information is the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our audit procedures included determining whether the supplemental financial information reconciles to the consolidated financial statements or the underlying accounting and other records, as applicable, and performing procedures to test the completeness and accuracy of the information presented in the supplemental financial information. In our opinion, such financial information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated financial statements as a whole.

/s/ Marcum LLP
San Francisco, California
July 2, 2020

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM ON SUPPLEMENTAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of
SuRo Capital Corp.:

We have audited the consolidated statements of assets and liabilities of SuRo Capital Corp. and subsidiaries (the "Company"), including the consolidated schedules of investments, as of December 31, 2018, and the related consolidated statements of operations, cash flows, and changes in net assets for each of the two years in the period ended December 31, 2018, and financial highlights (presented in Note 8) for each of the four years in the period then ended, and the related notes, and have issued our report thereon dated April 17, 2019, which contained an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements. The supplemental financial information set forth under the heading "Senior Securities" as of December 31, 2018, 2017, 2016 and 2015, appearing on page 23 of the Prospectus has been subjected to audit procedures performed in conjunction with the audit of the Company's consolidated financial statements. The supplemental financial information is the responsibility of the Company's management. Our audit procedures included determining whether the supplemental financial information reconciles to the consolidated financial statements or the underlying accounting and other records, as applicable, and performing procedures to test the completeness and accuracy of the information presented in the supplemental financial information. In our opinion, such financial information is fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the consolidated financial statements as a whole.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

San Francisco, California
July 2, 2020
